



### Cambridge English

# Grammar for with answers

Self-study grammar reference and practice

LOUISE HASHEMI and **BARBARA THOMAS** 



Official preparation material for Cambridge English: Preliminary, also known as Preliminary English Test (PET)



#### **CAMBRIDGE**

# Grammar for PET with answers

**Self-study grammar** reference and practice

LOUISE HASHEMI and BARBARA THOMAS

#### CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org

Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9780521601207

© Cambridge University Press 2006

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2006 10th printing 2013

Printed in Italy by L.E.G.O. S.p.A.

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-0-521-60120-7 Edition with answers and Audio CD ISBN 978-0-521-60121-4 Edition without answers

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Designed and produced by Kamae Design, Oxford.

#### Conte

Introduction Irregular v

1 Adjective p

using and f

3 Comparativ

4 Prese

present sin

past simn

C Droom

present pe

7 Past

past perfec

plurals; con

3 Deter

somelany;

10 Deta

11 Det

's lof: person

12 The

5-5

general no

#### Contents

Introduction	vi
Irregular verbs	viii
	Exam practice
1 Adjectives	
adjective position; adjective order; -ing/-ed adjectives; nouns as adjectives	Reading Part 2 1
2 Adverbs	
using and forming; irregular adverbs; position; modifying adverbs and adjectives	Reading Part 5 7
3 Comparisons	
comparative and superlative adjectives and adverbs; comparing nouns	Writing Part 113
4 Present tenses	
present simple; present continuous; state verbs; have got and have	Writing Part 219
5 Past tenses	
past simple; past continuous	Writing Part 325
6 Present perfect and past simple	
resent perfect and past simple; have gone and have been	Writing Part 1 31
7 Past perfect	
pest perfect and past simple; used to	Reading Part 537
8 Nouns	
parals; countable and uncountable; a/the/no article	Listening Part 343
9 Determiners and pronouns 1	
any; somebody/anybody etc.; much/many etc.	Reading Part 349
10 Determiners and pronouns 2	
** that etc.; all/most etc.; both/either/neither; each/every	Writing Part 1 55
11. Determiners and pronouns 3	
personal pronouns; possessives; reflexive pronouns; there/it + to be	Listening Part 2 61
12 The future	
going to; present continuous; present simple	Reading Part 167
13 Modals 1	
notes; asking someone to do something; suggestions and offers; permission	Listening Part 173
14 Modals 2	
accessity; orders and advice	Writing Part 379

15 Modals 3	Reading Part 185
certainty and possibility; ability	Tionaling Tare x
16 Questions and answers  yes/no; short answers; question words; agreeing with statements	Listening Part 491
17 Prepositions 1	
place and movement	Writing Part 397
18 Prepositions 2 time	Reading Part 4 103
19 Prepositions 3 expressions with prepositions; verbs and adjectives + prepositions; phrasal verbs	Writing Part 2 109
20 The -ing form -ing as subject; before/after etc. + -ing; prepositions + -ing; go/come + -ing	Reading Part 1 115
21 to or -ing?  verbs + to infinitive; make and let; verbs + -ing; verbs + to infinitive or + -ing	Reading Part 5 121
22 Conditionals 1 zero conditional; first conditional; unless	Reading Part 3127
23 Conditionals 2 second conditional; I wish	Reading Part 4 133
24 The passive passive forms and uses; to have something done	Reading Part 2 139
25 Reported speech 1 reporting what someone said; words which change	Writing Part 1 145
26 Reported speech 2 said and told; other verbs used for reporting; reporting questions; polite questions	Reading Part 4 151
which, who and that; whose and where	Reading Part 2 157
28 So/such; too/enough so/such (+ that); enough and too (+ to infinitive and for)	Writing Part 1 163
29 Linking words 1 because (of), as and since; so and therefore; to and in order to	Reading Part 3 169
30 Linking words 2 but/(al)though; in spite of / despite; both and; either or	Reading Part 1 175
Recording scripts  Key  Grammar glossary  CD tracklist	197 215

#### Ackn

The auth Geraldin advice.

The authorized reproduction sources of welcome

Photogra p. 28 PCI p. 97(cl) Robert W Van Gogh Gogh, An (2) Cathe Najjar, p. p. 47 Ton p. 91 Gre Lossy, p. 1 p. 133(l) p. 143 (1) (5) giants Sann, (3) Ben Osbo (G) GPU;

> Illustratio 65, 77t, 97 127, 157; I Taylor pp. pp. 33, 112

Frieder M

(top = t, be

#### Acknowledgements

The authors would like to thank their editors, Alison Sharpe, Jamie Smith and Geraldine Mark, and all the other people who have contributed comments and advice.

The authors and publishers are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce copyright material. It has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used and in such cases the publishers would welcome information from the copyright owners:

Photographs: Action Plus: p. 103 All/Neil Tingle; Alamy: p. 22 Todd Bannor, p. 28 PCL, p. 43(c) Mark Sykes, p. 43(r) Justin Kase, p. 87(c) Ian Dagnall. p. 97(cl) Stephen Shepherd, p. 97(cl) David Hoffman Photo Library, p. 109 Robert W. Ginn, p. 125 Charles Bowman; The Bridgeman Art Gallery: p. 101 Van Gogh, Bedroom at Arles, 1888 (oil on canvas), Rijksmuseum Vincent Van Gogh, Amsterdam, The Netherlands; Getty Images: p. 5 (1) Bob Thomas, (2) Catherine Ledner, (3) Manfred Rutz, (4) Charles Gullung, p. 10 Michael Najjar, p. 34(1) Adrian Weinbrecht, p. 43(1) Melissa McManus, p. 46 Taxi, p. 47 Tony Anderson, p. 87(1) John Beatty, p. 87(r) Will & Deni McIntyre, p. 91 Greg Ceo, p. 95 Roberto Espinosa, p. 97(cr) Ghislain & Marie David de Lossy, p. 103 (C) Southern Stock, (F) Jerry Kobalenko, p. 106 Pierre Bourrier, p. 133(I) China Tourism Press, p. 133(r) Mark Scott, p. 142 Britt Erlanson. p. 143 (1) Stephen Derr, (2) Paul Costello, (3) John Sann, (4) Jason Todd, (5) giantstep inc, p. 149 Tim Mosenfelder, p. 160 David Leahy, p. 161 (2) John Sann, (3) Leland Bobbe; Photolibrary.com p. 115(cr) Mark Jones, p. 115(br) Ben Osborne, p. 161 (1) Botanica; Rex Features: p. 97(1) Clive Dixon, p. 103 (G) GPU; Science Photo Library p. 85(l) Ralph Eagle, p. 85(r) Astrid & Hanns-Frieder Michler

Illustrations: Kamae Design: pp. 56b, 57, 62, 77b; Mark Duffin pp. 1, 13, 14, 51, 65, 77t, 97, 99t, 121, 175; Stephane Gamain pp. 7, 22, 49, 55, 61, 67, 73, 75, 79, 127, 157; Ben Hasler pp. 17, 19, 25, 31, 37, 39, 58, 63, 69, 99b, 129, 163; Jo Taylor pp. 56t, 77m, 78, 94, 118, 130, 139, 140, 145, 146, 147, 156, 178; Ian West pp. 33, 112, 135, 165, 169.

(top = t, bottom = b, middle = m, left = l, right = r, centre = c)

#### Introduction

#### To the student

#### Who this book is for?

This book is for students preparing for the Cambridge Preliminary English Test. It covers the grammar you need for the exam. You can use it with a general English language course for extra grammar practice or with practice tests as part of a revision programme. You can use it in class or for self-study.

#### What is in the units?

This book contains thirty units. Each unit is in four parts:

A Context listening This introduces the grammar of the unit in context. It helps you to understand the grammar more easily when you study section B. It also gives you useful listening practice. Play the recording and answer the questions. Then check your answers in the key before you read the grammar section.

**B** Grammar Read through this section before you do the exercises. For each grammar point there are explanations with examples. At the end of each section, there is a note to tell you which exercises in C practise this grammar. You can also check in this section again when you are doing the exercises.

**C** Grammar exercises Write your answers to each exercise and then check them in the Key.

**D Exam practice** Each unit has an exam task. These help you practise the different parts of the exam. The exam task is followed by a grammar focus task. This gives you extra practice in the grammar for that unit.

#### What is in the key?

The key contains:

- answers for all the exercises. Check your answers at the end of each exercise. The key tells you which part of the Grammar section you need to look at again if you have any problems.
- sample answers to help you check your work for exercises where you use your own ideas.
- sample answers for all the writing tasks in the exam practice section. Read these after you have written your own answer. Study the language used and the way the ideas are organised.

#### Recording scripts

There are scripts for the context listening for each unit, and for the exam practice listening tasks. Look at the script after you answer the questions. It is a good idea to play the recording again while you read the script.

#### Note on contractions

This book generally uses contractions, for example *I'm* for *I am*, *wasn't* for *was not*, because these are always used in speech and are common in written English. The full forms are used in formal written English.



#### Irregular verbs

Verb	Past simple	Past participle
be	was were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bend	bent	bent
bite	bit	bitten
bleed	bled	bled
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
burn	burnt	burnt
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
dig	dug	dug
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forbid	forbade	forbidden
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
kneel	knelt	knelt
know	knew	known
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
learn	learnt	learnt
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent

Verb	Past simple	Past participle
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
sew	sewed	sewn
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
	showed	shown
show	shut	shut
shut		sung
sing	sang	sunk
sink		sat
sit	sat	slept
sleep	slept	smelt
smell	smelt	
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
spill	spilt	spilt
spoil	spoilt	spoilt
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung	stung
strike	struck	struck
sweep	swept	swept
swim	swam	swum
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

A1 Lo

A2 W

A3 1<

3

4 W

We

A4 1<

2

3

Lo Wh SOIL

size Wh Wh

#### Adjectives

## 1

#### adjective position; adjective order; -ing/-ed adjectives; nouns as adjectives

A	Conte	200	E-17	mine	ij
	C. C. L.	200	CA		3

Look at the things in the pictures. Which of the adjectives in the box can you use to describe them? You can use some more than once.

beautiful	long	short	black	grey	white	cotton	leather	silk	wool
\$/			RA		魚	12(27)			
long blac	<b>•</b>		)	CE					5
You are th	e going		convers		ween Cal		Emily.	E	.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
144 Listen	to the f	irst part	of the re	ecording	again an	d answer	these ques	tions.	
1 Who is t	ired?	Callum	**		5	Who is bo	red?	************	
2 Who is e	xcited?	5751W44524+4+9344+43041	P4023344		6	What is in	teresting?	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	**********
3 What is	tiring?	140214;5451;844845989			7	What is ex	citing?		*****
4 Who isn'	t really	intereste	d in clot	nes?					
Vhat is the Ve use adje	ctives er	nding in .	**(********	to desci	ribe peop	le.		he sent	ences.
Ve use adje	ctives er	nding in .	***************	to descr	ribe thing	s and peo	ple.		
Listen	to the	second pa	art of th	e record	ing again	and fill in	n the gaps.		
1 a	lovely		***************	*4109############	ememberedik desvive	******************	skirt		
2 my		********				ots			
3 those	***********	******** **********	0145-21622416244444	trainer	'S				
ook at the	adiectiv	es vou'v	e writter	١.					
Which descr		,							
omeone's o	_			**	color	ır?		**	
ize or shape	?	***************	*********		the r	naterial?	******************	**************	
What kind o									
What kind o	r adjecti	ves usua	цу go las	t'	***************	+#52.+1 F			

#### Grammus

#### Adjective position

Adjectives usually go before nouns:

I bought a white T-shirt. (not a I-shirt white)

Adjectives don't change. (not with the I william)

Adjectives go after some verbs (e.g. be, get, become, look, seem, appear, sound, taste, smell, feel):

They're comfortable and they'll look good and in stant

The material felt really soft

▲ A few adjectives (e.g. afraid, alone, asleep, awake) cannot go before a noun:

The car was asless on the bed (not the asless ent the med)



#### Adjective order

When there are two or more adjectives, they go in this order:

	opinion	size/age/shape	colour	materials	
, t	1/1/	× 100 °	* 1	. •	,
1	D 11 .1		, ,		7
יווני	Τ,	×0.	1 4 7		1 ".
- ,1 1(		1.1.	, ,		( I,

#### We put and

- between two colour adjectives: unit and and a control
- between two adjectives after a verb:

We don't say my favourite and long and hank to note



#### Adjectives ending in -ing and -ed

Some adjectives have two forms: -ing and -ed. The adjectives have different meanings:

ing adjectives describe people and things	-ed adjectives describe feelings
Later port of	1 .
Her sepet sees	
( ) }	1 1 , 1 , 1 1 1

#### Nouns used as adjectives

When we put two nouns together, the first one works like an adjective, e.g. a birthday party: birthday tells us what kind of party it is.

chirthday party a clothes shop a computer sure a language sen or estudent carl



#### Quantitude Experience Match the halves of these sentences. a tired because I got up too early. 2 The school was b bad so we didn't drink it. 3 My boss seemed c wonderful because it was home-made. 4 We got d sad on the phone. 5 The bread tasted e angry but she was just in a hurry. 6 I was feeling f wet because we didn't have our raincoats. 7 The milk smelled g unusual because it had no rules. Rewrite these sentences adding the adjectives in brackets. 1 My friend gave me a ring for my birthday. (silver/antique) My Friend which me do in that i write for me trickly 2 I wore my jeans when I painted the ceiling. (old/blue/dirty) 3 I borrowed my sister's dress to wear to the party. (silk/lovely/long) 4 I was surprised that Mike wore that jacket. (white/cotton) 5 He bought some shoes yesterday. (expensive/new) 6 Jenny's father gave her a necklace for her 18th birthday. (long/gold/beautiful) Underline the correct adjective in each sentence. 1 That was an interesting/interested lesson. 2 My parents were tiring/tired after the long flight. 3 We were boring/bored so we went to the cinema. 4 I enjoy my job but it's very tiring/tired. 5 You'll be surprising/surprised when I tell you what happened.

- 6 We were exciting/excited about seeing Michael again.
- 7 All the programmes on TV tonight look boring/bored.
- 8 I'm staying in an amazing/amazed hotel.
- 9 My friend was annoying/annoyed with me because I was late.
- 10 Hans is interesting/interested in art so I took him to the Picasso exhibition.

Match a noun in A with each noun in B then complete the sentences below.

football evening film fire	A	1		0		fire	credit	B 				itation		
----------------------------	---	---	--	---	--	------	--------	-------	--	--	--	---------	--	--

address book	alarm clock	
Marine or hallomary as volumentally		

- 1 I bought a new \_\_\_\_\_because I couldn't wake up in the morning.
- 2 Everyone was looking at the ...... as she came into the hotel.
- 3 The café wouldn't accept my ...... so I paid cash.
- 4 I usually clean my ...... when I get home from a match.
- 5 We couldn't get tickets for the ...... so we went in the afternoon.
- 6 Our teacher was late because there was a big ...... on the motorway.
- Read this email and look at the adjectives. There are eight mistakes. Correct them.

Hi Sally

I can't see you next week because I'm going on holiday with my parents.

We always stay near a town very small on the coast. There is a lovely
and sandy beach and the sea is clear and warm. The town has lots of old
beautiful buildings. My parents like going to the galleries art but I get
boring so I go to the shops. You can buy cheaps clothes there.

I hope we go to my restaurant favourite.

Write back and tell me all your excited news.

Duncan

#### D Exam practice

#### **Reading Part 2**

The people below all want to hire bikes for short trips.

In the next page there are eight cycle trips in a tourist information brochure.

Decide which trip would be the most suitable for the following people.

For questions 1-5, mark the correct letter (A-H).





David is an experienced cyclist. He has a couple of days to spend on his hobby of bird-watching. He has a small tent and wants to get away from the crowds.





lan and his daughters Kim and Kylie would like an easy bike ride with time to play on the beach and have a swim in the sea. They have a picnic with them.





Nadine and Lee are interested in old buildings. They don't mind a few hills, but don't want to go to the mountains. They'd like to go to a restaurant for lunch.





Elizabeth enjoys cycling to keep fit, but she must be at home in the evening. She enjoys drawing and taking photographs of unusual natural scenery.





Zoe and Bea don't want to cycle very far and they can't start early in the morning. They're interested in art and would like to have lunch somewhere near the sea.

#### RECOMMENDED CYCLE RIDES FROM AILSEA

- A Seaview Gallery (less than an hour's ride along the coast road) shows paintings and photographs by local artists in attractive rooms on the cliffs. Open 2pm-5pm. There's a teashop next door which serves delicious lunches and teas.
- C Picnic at Ailmouth Castle after a two-hour cycle ride along the coast. For five hundred years it has stood on the cliffs, looking down on the dangerous black rocks and waves far below. Now it's a beautiful old ruin. Remember your camera, because you'll want to photograph it at sunset.
- E This pleasant flat route uses the pretty little lanes which follow the coast to an excellent sandy beach, less than an hour away. There's plenty of room for ball games and it's very safe to swim. A pleasant day out for anyone who can ride a bike.
- G Perfect for active young cyclists who enjoy being alone in beautiful scenery. Leave in the afternoon to catch the wonderful sunset from high in the mountains. Camping is permitted for up to two nights. See wild birds and animals among the rocks and trees.

- **B** An excellent destination for families is Ailsham, where there is a campsite. The route includes only one tiny hill and the views of woods and farmland are lovely. Stop for a picnic under the trees. When you arrive, enjoy a swim in the river, then spend a night in one of the tents provided.
- D If you enjoy really brilliant scenery and don't mind starting early, go to the mountains for the day. You'll want to bring your camera with you for the amazing rocks, quiet pools and exciting waterfalls. The return journey is all downhill, so you can get back quickly in the afternoon.
- F A good day's bike ride through attractive countryside away from the coast brings you to Otterbourne Hall, a historic house open to the public. You can enjoy a surprisingly cheap but delicious lunch in the cosy restaurant, and then you'll be pleased to discover that there are no steep hills on the return route.
- H Only half an hour's ride away at Fendwich, is a popular new restaurant with amazing views across the beach. Eat a delicious lunch and watch the birds on the cliffs, then look round the souvenir shops before cycling back along the coast. An excellent trip if you don't have a whole day available.

#### Branch Belline

Put the two adjectives in each sentence into the correct order. Check your answers by finding them in the text.

- 1 He told us about the black/dangerous snakes in the jungle.
- 2 There was a beautiful/old tree in the middle of the field.
- 3 We followed a flat/pleasant path beside the river.
- 4 The model wore a little/pretty hat which matched her coat.
- 5 The old couple employed two active/young students to tidy their garden. .....
- 6 We went to a concert by a new/popular band.

#### A Commat limming

Josh lives in Manchester.
The rest of his family
live in London. What
are they all doing on
Friday morning?





to the station



4	You are going to hear three conversations Jos	h has later on Friday.
	Conversation 1: Where is Josh? Why i	is he going home?
	Conversation 2: Where is Josh? Why i	is his sister unhappy?
		e is his sister? Why? Why?
P	Listen to conversation 1 again and fill in the	gaps with adverbs.
	1 I cycle very 3 I know	I'mlate for everything.
	2 Oh, but ride won't you? 4 You've	arranged everything
	How do we usually make an adverb from an adject these four adverbs?	rive? What are the adjectives for
	Listen to conversation 2 again and fill in the	gaps.
	1 It's going to be boring. 3 I wra	apped it well.
	2 We have to work hard. 4 It's	
	The words you've written are adverbs. How do the which follow?	-
	Listen to conversation 3 again. Put the advertinto the correct gaps in the sentences. Stop the rec	os and adverb phrases on the right ording when you need to.
	1 Well I can't come	**
	2 They stop	outside our house there
	3 The traffic's moving	round the corner patiently nov always after school very slowly
	4 She's waiting	at her friend's house often

Look at the adverbs and adverb phrases you've written. For each one decide if it tells you how often?, how?, where?, or when?

5 She ...... goes ......

#### 8 Girmmar

#### **Bi** Using adverbs

Adjectives tell us about a noun: Adverbs tell us about a verb:

He cycles carefully. He's a careful cyclist.

Adverbs say how often, where, how much, how and when:

	how often?	verb	how?	where?	when?
1	171	-77		here	on Friday lunchtimes.
Siti		is waiting	patiently	at her friend's house.	

Adverbs can be one word or a phrase:

I'm getting on my bike now.

I'm outside my office.

▲ Some verbs are followed by adjectives not adverbs. (See Unit 1 Grammar B1.):

That's unfair. I feel happy. You sound miserable.

#### **B2** Forming adverbs

Adjective + -ly → adverb

+ -ly  $\rightarrow$  perfectly perfect

+ -ly  $\rightarrow$  usually usual

Spelling rules:

adjective ending		adverb		
	noisy	y	+ -ily	noisily
,	comfortable	÷	+ -y	comfortably
-e	safe	keep -e	+ -ly	safely

⚠ Some words look like adverbs because they end -ly but they are adjectives (e.g. friendly, likely, lonely, lovely, silly, ugly):

He was a friendly man. He told me a silly story.

We don't make adverbs from these adjectives. We use a phrase:

He spoke in a friendly way.

#### **Irregular adverbs**

Well is the adverb for good:

He's a good boss. He treats us well.

A /ell is also an adjective (= not ill):

I had stomach-ache last week but I'm well this week.

Some ad

adjectiv

It was a

He had o

harte

\* The ad



Most ad

When?

How oft · het re

• Par To

· BI T a

The salve

Some adjectives and adverbs look the same (e.g. fast, early, hard, late, daily/weekly/monthly):

adjective	adverb
t was a fast tram	r. · fast
He had an early breakfast	il e carly
s hard work.	They work hard. (not They work hardly .
re's a late bus on Fridays.	We arrived late. (not weathern more

<sup>\*</sup> The adverb hardly \* 'almost not'. \*\* The adverb lately \* 'recently'.





Most adverbs usually go after the verb. If there are several adverbs, they go in this order:

How? Where? When?

h cycled quickly to the station at one o'clock

When? adverbs can sometimes go at the beginning of the sentence.

At one o'clock Josh cycled quickly to the station

#### How often? adverbs usually go:

- before a one-word verb: I never so
- before the second part of a two-part verb: / never
- BUT after am/is/are/was/were: I'm often lau

The adverbs already, also, just, still, even and only usually go in the same place as **how often?** adverbs: still at the station. I've just arrived

#### Adverbs do not go between the verb and its object:

and your present on Wednesday. (**not** I vosted on Wednesday your present present carefully. (**not** I wrapped carefully the present.)

#### ▲ We say He speaks Spanish very well. (not He speaks very well Spanish)

. o and as well = also but they usually go at the end of the sentence:

vou a card as well / too



#### Modifying adverbs and adjectives

me adverbs change the meaning of adjectives or other adverbs:

strongest really very rather fairly quite less strong

If be really pleased to see you erry quickly



#### Grammar exercises

Look at the adjectives in brackets. For each gap decide whether to make the adjective into an adverb. Write the adverb or the adjective.



10

1 Ls

2 1 m

3 oth

500

- -

		were 30, they had started to dress like their own parents!
C1	Lo	ok at each word in italics and decide whether it is correct. If not, write the correct word
	1	They listened careful when the instructor told them what to do.
		The weather today is well.
	3	We trained hardly because we had an important match.
	4	We have a weekly spelling test in English.
	5	I slept bad because there was a thunderstorm.
	6	He answered the question correctly.
	7	I arrived at school lately and missed the beginning of the lesson
	8	Cara's cousin gave her a friendly wave as he left.
	9	I could understand quite good because the teacher spoke clear
	10	We worked fast and finished early.
-		1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

#### Are the adverbs in the correct place in these sentences? Correct any mistakes.

8 This shop always 3 openion Sun rays	
9 Taeko and I have aready become friends	
10 My friends and I went last right to a rightely	
	b from the box and an adjective you choose.
very really extremely fairly ra	ather quite
	ally feel
Put the adverbs on the right into the corr	ect place in each line.
9.6.6	
Hi Giacomo Did you have a good weekend?  usually at the weekend  1 Listay at home/but	usually at the weekend
2 I went to a theme park. I wanted to go on the big wheel but	near London on Saturday
3 other people had the same idea so I	as well
4 had to wait but it was a great ride.	in the queue patiently very
5 I went on the water slide.	also
o I had lunch and I spent all day in the park.	in a café at midday
7 I'll forget it!	never
I had a wonderful day. See you soon. Rory	there really

#### **Exam practice**

#### Reading Part 5

Read the text below and choose the correct word for each space. For each question, mark the correct letter A, B, C or D.

xam	ple	4
:xam	ple	1

O A every

B some

C all

D most

#### Family meals

Does your family sit down together (0) ...... day to share a meal? Does someone plan the food carefully, buy it (1) ...... and cook it (2) ......, so that you really enjoy eating it? Nowadays, the answer to these questions (3) ...... often 'no'. Adults are usually working and arrive home late. Granny probably lives too (4) ...... away to visit regularly. Children eat fast so they never learn that preparing good food and eating healthily (5) ...... time and thought. In some families, each person eats separately, (6) ...... television or working at a desk and the children often eat (7) ...... By sitting (8) ...... the table with other people, however, children have the chance to learn that a shared meal is a (9) ..... for family members to tell each other their news. But if we can't (10) ...... eat together, we should try to have family meals at weekends. It's good for our health, it's good for society, and it's fun.

- 1 A local
- B locally
- C near
- **D** nearly

- 2 A well 3 A gives
- B nice B is
- C tastv C has
- D good **D** makes

- 4 A distant 5 A wants
- B long
- C much C takes **B** gets
- D asks

- 6 A seeing 7 A single
- **B** looking B alone
- C watching C lonely
- **D** attending **D** privately

D far

- 8 A at 9 A possibility
- B on **B** chance
- C by C situation
- **D** in **D** event

- 10 A quite
- B ever
- C never
- **D** always

#### Grammar focus task

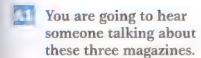
- 1 Write the adverbs from the exam task which mean:

  - 1 with care \_\_\_\_\_ 2 in the neighbourhood \_\_\_\_ 3 normally \_\_\_\_
  - 4 at the same time each day, week, month etc. 5 in a way which is good
- 2 Write the adjectives which the adverbs come from.
  - 1 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_

7 .....

comparative and superiative adjectives and adverbs; comparing nouns

#### A Context lielesing





Which of the following words do you think she uses?

hairdresse	er music	teenagers	homework	posters	holidays	sales
reviews	stadium	journalists	sport adv	erts		

- Listen and tick the words you hear.
- Listen to the first part of the recording again and complete the sentences below.
  - 1 Hits! seems more colour two. than Buzz. 4 Hits! is ....................... than Buzz too.
  - 2 Buzz is as ...... as Hits! 5 Buzz isn't as ...... as Hits!
  - 3 Hits! is less ..... than Buzz.
- Listen to the second part again and tick the correct magazines.

Which magazine:	Hits!	Buzz	Smash
is the newest?			
has got the most reviews?			
is the most expensive?			
has the most adverts?			

Look at A3 and A4. Which exercise is about comparing two things? Which exercise is about comparing more than two things?

#### 8 Commer

#### Comparative and superlative adjectives

Comparing two people or things:



Buzz is the most expensive (magazine). Hits! is smaller than Buzz. Hits! is the least expensive (magazine).

We make comparative and superlative adjectives like this:

adjective	comparative	superlative
one syllable:		
long	+ -er  → longer	+ -est → the longest
ending in -e nice	+ -r → nicer	+ -st → the nicest
ending in one vowel + -b, -d, -g, -n, -p or -t hig	double the last letter + -er  → higger	double the last letter + -est  → the biggest
two syllables:		
famous	+ more → more famous	+ the most  → the most famous
ending in -y dirty	-y and + -ier → dirrier	-y and + -iest  → the dirtiest
three syllables:		1
popular	+ more  → more popular	+ the most  → the most popular

#### ▲ Some adjectives are irregular:

 $good \rightarrow better \rightarrow the\ best,\ bad \rightarrow worse \rightarrow the\ worst,\ far \rightarrow further \rightarrow the\ furthest$ His latest song is better than his last one. He's the best singer in the band. This magazine is worse than that one. It's the worst magazine I've ever read.

We also use (not) as... as and less ... than to compare things:

Buzz isn't as popular as Hits' or Buzz is less popular than Hits' (= 11.18' is more popular than Buzz.)

When two things are the same, we say:

Buzz is as popular as Hits!

<b>▶</b> more	Hits! is more colourful than Buzz
<b>∢</b> less	Buzz isn't as/so colourful as Hits! B
= the same	Buzz ses de indus Hir "
▲ the most	Smash is to a man a recovery to the exercise
▼ the least	Buzz is the least interester, the great in





#### Comparative and superlative adverbs

Sometimes we compare how we do something:

can read Hits! more easily than Buzz

Smash journalists write better than some national journalists

Adverbs ending in -ly form comparatives and superlatives like this:

adverb	comparative	superlative
	more slowly	trong dear
	more beautifully	1
	more easily	1 26 > >6 >

ther adverbs form comparatives and superlatives like short adjectives:

rd → harder → hardest

ster works harder than I do but Alex works the hardest

#### Some adverbs are irregular:

 $\mathbb{I} \to better \to the best, badly \to worse \to the worse$ 

the greater well Religious the group better more not Roman in the extrasortimen's built i the guitar the best

A We don't use superlative adverbs very often.





#### **Comparing nouns**

te use more/the most to compare both countable and uncountable nouns:

smash has more reviews than Hits!

has the most adverts

ash contains the most information

we use fewer / the fewest to compare countable nouns:

> are fewer adverts in Smash than in Hits! has the fewest posters.

We use less / the least to compare uncountable nouns:

There's less rubbish in Smash than in Buz/ Smash contains the least rubbish.

#### **Grammar exercises** Complete these sentences with a comparative adjective. 1 My teacher is friendly but my sister's teacher is ... friendler ... 2 My bike is big but my brother's bike is ....... 4 Geography is interesting but history is ................... 5 I felt nervous but my friend felt ...... 6 Tim is rich but John is ...... 7 This exercise is easy but the next one is ...... 8 Madrid is hot but Bangkok is ...... Write sentences comparing these things. 1 Football / exciting / volleyball. Facility and the second secon 2 Golf / safe / horse-riding. 3 Water-skiing / difficult / swimming. 4 Motorcycling / noisy / cycling. 5 Rugby balls / heavy / tennis balls. Rewrite your answers above in two different ways. 6 Jans of a contract to the contract of the second of the 7 .... 8 ...... 10 \_\_\_\_\_ Change the adjective in brackets into an adverb. 1 She designed the clothes (careful) 2 She coloured the drawings (neat) 3 She explained her designs (good) 4 She sewed her clothes (beautiful) Here are the results of a competition for fashion students. Complete sentences 5-8

about Daisy, Jill and Paola using more and the most with the adverbs in sentences 1-4.

	Daisy	Jill	Paola
designed her clothes	***	**	*
coloured her drawings	*	**	***
explained her designs	*	***	**
sewed her clothes	**	***	*

- 5 Jill designed her clothes attack than Paola but Daisy designed hers
- 6 Jill coloured her drawings ...... than Daisy but Paola coloured hers ............
- 7 Paola explained her designs ...... than Daisy but Jill explained hers ......
- 8 Daisy sewed her clothes \_\_\_\_\_ than Paola but Jill sewed hers \_\_\_\_\_.



Match the words on the left with their opposites on the right.

expensive near old small tidy

big cheap far new untidy

Look at the pictures of three houses for sale and correct the sentences below.

A.

F

C



## BB



Built 1887 £200,000 Two bedrooms, one bathroom, sitting room, kitchen, 5kms from city centre Built 2004 £155,000 Three bedrooms, two bathrooms, sitting room, kitchen, in city centre Built 1934 £325,000
Five bedrooms, three
bathrooms, sitting room,
dining room, kitchen,
2 kms from city centre

- 1 C is the smallest house. C is The biggest nouse.
- 2 A is the newest house. A is.
- 3 B has the most untidy garden. B ras.
- 4 B is the most expensive house.

Now complete these sentences about the three houses using more, most, fewer or fewest.

- 6 B has .... rooms than A.
- 9 A has the ..... bedrooms.
- 7 C has the ..... rooms.
- 10 C has ..... bathrooms than B.
- 8 B has ..... bedrooms than C.

#### D Exam practice

#### **Writing Part 1**

Here are some sentences about a radio station.

For each question, complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

Use no more than three words.

Ewa	-	am I	ا ما
	ш	IUI	le:

_					-				
0	Radio	255	IS	mv	favou	urite	radio	station	ĥ

I think Radio 255 is ...... than the other radio stations.

1 Other radio stations have fewer listeners than Radio 255.

Radio 255 has \_\_\_\_\_\_ listeners than other radio stations.

2 Steve Wood is funnier than all the other disc jockeys.

Steve Wood is the ...... disc jockey.

3 I find the sports programmes interesting.

in the sports programmes.

4 The music programmes are less popular than the news programmes.

The music programmes aren't ...... the news programmes.

5 I entered a competition but I'm unlikely to win.

I entered a competition but I ......likely to win.

#### Grammar focus task

#### Sentences 0, 1, 2 and 4 test comparisons.

Can you complete each of these sentences in a different way so it still means the same?

- 1 Radio 255 has the ......listeners.
- 2 The other disc jockeys aren't ...... Steve Wood.
- 4 The news programmes are ...... than the music programmes.

#### Present tenses

present simple; present continuous; state verbs; have got and have

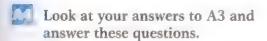


#### A Committediment

- Look at the pictures. What are these places?
- You are going to hear a tour guide talking to some tourists in a coach. She is telling them about places they can see in a city.

Listen and tick the places in A1 which they see.

- Listen again and complete the sentences below.
  - 1 Our tours usually last about one hour.
  - 2 The bus ..... into Queens Road.
  - 3 We ..... the City Theatre.
  - 4 This Cititour bus ...... along the High Street into the market place.
  - 5 At the moment some musicians ...... for an outdoor concert there.



- 1 Which sentences contain the present simple? .....
- 2 Which sentences contain the present continuous? ......
- 3 Which sentences tell you about what usually happens?
- 4 Which sentences tell you only about now? .....
- Sometimes the tour guide uses have and sometimes have got before a noun. Look at these words and put them into the correct column.

a good time a map a sore throat a new entertainment centre a cinema air-conditioning good shops a walk lunch

have	have got
a di'd *mi	

Look at the recording script on page 182 or listen again and check.

#### Il drawnsar

#### Present simple

I/you/we/they + verb

I live in Durrington.

She lives in Durrington.

I/you/we/they don't + verb

he/she/it doesn't + verb

Do I/you/we/they + verb

Do you live in Durrington?

Do you live in Durrington?

#### ⚠ We use do to make questions and negatives for all verbs except to be.

we use the present simple:

for habits and things which happen regularly:

I go there most weekends.

especially with always, never, usually, often,

and sometimes:

The tour usually lasts about one hour.

◆ for permanent situations:
 I live in Durrington.

 We don't see animals in the city centre.

• for general truths:

Many tourists enjoy coach tours.

-C1, C2

I am ('m)
you/we/they are ('re)
he/she/it is ('s)
I am not ('m not)
you/we/they are not (aren't) They aren't here.
he/she/it is not (isn't)
Am I ...?
Are you/we/they ...? Is she here?
Is he/she/it ...?

(We also use the present simple for the future, see Unit 12.)

#### **Present continuous**

I am ('m) + -ing

you/we/they are ('re) + -ing

he/she/it is ('s) + -ing

I am not ('m not) + -ing

you/we/they are not (aren't) + -ing

he/she/it is not (isn't) + -ing

Am I + - ing ...?

Are you/we/they + -ing ...?

We're visiting Durrington this week.

We're visiting Durrington this week.

Are you/we/they are not (aren't) + -ing

Are you visiting Durrington this week?

#### We use the present continuous

• for the present moment:

Is he/she/it + -ing ...?

The bus is now turning into Queens Road. What are you doing? I'm listening to you.

• for temporary situations:

This week our tours are taking a little longer.

An international conprove is using that  $\sigma \circ (t) \in [t]$ , a comperence  $t^*$  They don't use it all the time.)

(We also use the present continuous for the future, see Unit 12.)

#### I St

#### State verbs

Some verbs almost always use simple tenses not continuous tenses:

people prefer the new theatre. (not Most people are preferring the more promise

\* :ke . no colate the error (not I'm liking come or not bear

Here are some important state verbs:

cong, hate, have/have got (= possess, see below), hear, know, like, love, mean, prefer, realise, recognise, remember, see, understand, want, wish



#### 7

#### Have got and have

I/you/we/they have got ('ve got)

he/she/it has got ('s got)

I/you/we/they have not got (haven't got)

he/she/it has not got (hasn't got)

Have I/you/we/they got ...?

Has he/she/it got ...?

11 ...



I/you/we/they have

he/she/it has

I/you/we/they don't have

he/she/it doesn't have

Do I/you/we/they have ...?

Does he/she/it have ...?

lit base 2

we use have got or have in the present simple (not the present continuous)

• for things which we possess:

We've got a new entertainment centre. = We have

Has everyone got a map? = Does everyone have

haven't got any money. = We don't have

• for describing things and people:

10's got a cinema and a concert halt

to doesn't have to the seals

Has he got long dark tout '

• for illnesses:

ve got a sore throat

A We don't normally use have got in the past and the future (see Units 5 and 12).

use have (not have got) in many common expressions (have a bath, have a holiday etc.) to talk sout actions. When it means do, eat, take, enjoy, etc. we can use simple or continuous tenses:

nu're having a good time

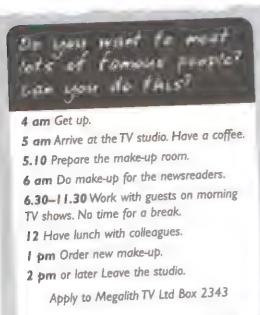
m't vou have a walk reconstruct

in have lunch in one of the copy

JARE!

#### C Strente nymeites

Read this advertisement for a job as a TV make-up artist. Complete the magazine article below with the correct form of the present simple.



#### A hard day at the studio.

Sharon usually 1 gets up at four o'clock she
hates that! She 2 at the film
studio at five and 3 a coffee She
4her room carefully. At six she
5 the make up for the
newsreaders and for the next five hours she
6with guests on morning TV
shows. She 7 time for a break but
at noon she 8lunch with
colleagues. After lunch she
9 new make-up.
She 10 the
studio before two o'clock

Now make some notes about your typical day and then write a short description of it.

It's a tiring job!

Read this mobile phone conversation. Fill in the gaps with a verb from the box in the correct form of the present continuous.

come come do get get leave read shout sit talk wait

Mandy: Dwayn? This is Mandy.

Mandy: 3 I ..... on the bus.

Dwayn: What?

Mandy: The bus has broken down. We 4 \_\_\_\_\_ for another bus to come and take us to town.

Dwayn: Oh, no.

	andy: Yes. Some of the passengers 5 angrily, but what can the driver do?							
	wayn: 6 (he) to them?							
Ma	andy: No, he 7 a newspaper. Ah, here's the other bus. I 8 a							
	on to it now. The bus 9 to the party!							
He	ere is part of a student's letter to a penfriend. Fill in the gaps with the correct form of e present simple or continuous.							
ear	Par i							
	'm (I/be) a university student. As it's holiday time now. 2							
	il. At the end of every term 3 (I/come) back to my home town and							
	(I/get) a job in this hotel to earn money							
	s summer (I/share) a room in the hotel with another girl.							
	(It/not be) as comfortable as my parents' house, but 7							
pre	fer) it because 8 (I/not want) to travel home late at night So this year							
	(I/save) more money and 10(I/get) more sleep							
Fo	r each of these sentences, write another sentence with the same meaning. Use have got.							
1	There are five bedrooms in our house. It is the face following.							
2								
3	Her hair is long and straight.							
4	Is there a swimming-pool at your hotel?							
5	I'm not rich.							
6	Are there locks on these suitcases?							
7	The doctor is too busy to see you today.							
Un	derline the correct form of the verb.							
1	I know/am knowing this part of town quite well.							
2	Amy has/is having very small feet.							
3								
4	My grandmother stays/is staying in my room this week so I sleep/am sleeping in the							
	sitting-room.							
5	Do you understand/Are you understanding my situation?							
6								
7	These CDs belong/are belonging to my sister.							
R	Have you seen John's email? He has/is having a great time in Tokyo.							
O	Trave you seem joint a chian; the may is moving a great time in Tokyo.							

#### D Exam practice

Look at the Writing Part 2 task below.

Write down some ideas for your answer. Use some of these words if you want.

bed and breakfast cafés campsite hotel nightclubs restaurants shops sports hall tennis courts youth hostel

#### Grammar focus task

Think about which tenses you will use to:

- describe where you are staying.
- write about the facilities.
- say what you do in the evenings.
- 1 When will you use the present continuous?
- 2 When will you use have got?
- 3 When will you use the present simple?

Now do the exam task below.

#### **Writing Part 2**

You are on holiday in a seaside town.

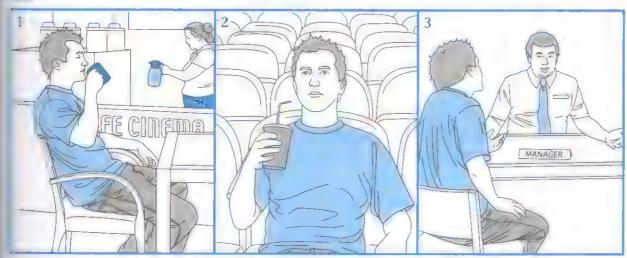
Write a postcard to an English friend of yours. In your postcard, you should

- describe where you are staying
- say what facilities the town has got
- tell your friend what you do in the evenings.

Write 35-45 words.

#### A Guniox distantage

Look at each picture of Donny. Where is he?



Listen and check if you were right.

What news does Donny tell his mother?

- Listen again and answer the questions below.
- 1 What did Donny's mother do at eight o'clock?
- 2 Why didn't he answer his phone?
- 3 What did she do at nine o'clock?
- 4 Why wasn't his phone switched on?
- 5 What did she do at ten o'clock?
- 6 Why didn't he answer his phone at ten o'clock? .....
- Now listen again and read the recording script on p.183 to check your answers.

Look at your answers to A3 and answer these questions.

- 1 Which sentences contain the past simple?
- 2 Which sentences contain the past continuous? ......
- 3 Which sentences tell you about a past activity which continued for some time?
- 4 Which sentences tell you about a single event?

#### **B** Grammar

#### Past simple - forms

In the past simple

• we add -ed/-d to regular verbs: want  $\rightarrow$  wanted, hope  $\rightarrow$  hoped, shop  $\rightarrow$  shopped

I/you/he/she/it/we/they + verb + -ed/-d I phoned you.

I/you/he/she/it/we/they did not (didn't) + verb She didn't phone me.

Did I/you/he/she/it/we/they + verb Did you phone me?

 some verbs are irregular and do not end in -ed/-d: buy → bought, go → went, make → made (See p.viii.)

I/you/he/she/it/we/they + irregular past verb
I/you/he/she/it/we/they did not (didn't) + verb
I/wou/he/she/it/we/they + verb
I went to the cinema.

They didn't go to the cinema
Did you go to the cinema?

• to be has two forms (was and were)

I/he/she/it was
you/we/they were
I/he/she/it was not (wasn't)
you/we/they were not (weren't)
Was I/he/she/it ...?
Were you/we/they ...?
I was there.
They weren't there.
Were you there?

#### Past simple - use

We use the past simple

• for completed actions, events and situations in the past:

I wanted to see the new film.

Your phone was on but you did

Your phone was on but you didn't answer. Why didn't you answer?

She left the desk and ran out of the building.

#### Past continuous - forms

We form the past continuous of all verbs with was/were + -ing:

I/he/she/it was + verb + -ing
you/we/they were + verb + -ing
I/he/she/it was not (wasn't) + verb + -ing
you/we/they were not (weren't) + verb + -ing
Was I/he/she/it + verb + -ing ...?
Were they having a coffee?
Were you/we/they + verb + -ing ...?

⚠ We do not use state verbs in the past continuous. (See Unit 4.)

#### **B4** Past continuous - use

We use the past continuous

• for an unfinished activity around a time in the past: At nine o'clock I was sitting in the cinema.

8.30 
$$\leftarrow$$
 ... I was sitting in the cinema ...  $\rightarrow$  9.45

△ Compare: At 8.30 I sat down. (= one event at 8.30)

• for a past activity beginning before a past event and continuing until or after it. For the event we use when + the past simple: I was talking to the manager when you rang me.

(I started talking to the manager) ... I was talking ... (I continued talking)

You rang me

When I went out, you were having a shower.

I went out ← ... You were having a shower ... →

I was leaving the cinema when I saw a notice.

← ... I was leaving (I stopped to read it)

I saw a notice

(Compare: I left the cinema then I saw a notice. = 1 I left, 2 I saw. See Unit 30.)

• for two activities at the same time in the past (often with *while* or *and*): I was sitting near the ticket desk and the manager was talking.

I was sitting

the manager was talking

I was having a coffee while I was waiting.

I was having a coffee

I was waiting



# C Grammar a word here-

Read this postcard and put the verbs in brackets into the past simple.

from Box B in the past simple.



CI

Tanya and her brother Tony gave a party together. Use the information below and write sentences with the past continuous to show how they prepared for the party.

555		
	Tanya	Tony
10 am	make a shopping list	email their friends
1 pm	buy the drinks	choose the music
3 pm	tidy the house	prepare the food
6 pm	blow up the balloons	decorate the rooms
7 pm	iron her dress	have a shower

- 1 At ten o'clock Tanya was making a shopping list and Y. At one o'clock

  3 At three o'clock
- 4 At six o'clock .....
- Complete each sentence with a verb from Box A in the past continuous and a verb
  - A climb cook dance stay B burn discover meet fall study tidy work paint play see

5 At seven o'clock .....

- 1 I was larged with my boyfriend when the disc jockey and our favourite song.
- 2 My parents ..... in a restaurant when they .............

3	I grammar when I asleep.
4	The chef spaghetti when he his hand.
5	The artist in the South of France when she her most famous picture.
6	The scientist his laboratory when he the new drug.
7	We the wall when the gardener us.

**C4** 

Read this email and underline the best tense for each verb.

#### Hi Bea

A funny thing 1 happened/was happening to me and my flatmates on Saturday.

On Friday night we 2 went/were going to the college party. There were some new students there and we 3 met/were meeting someone called Lucas. We 4 invited/were inviting him to Sunday lunch. It was a great party so we 5 didn't go/weren't going home until three o'clock.

Of course, we 6 didn't get/weren't getting up early on Saturday morning. At half past twelve I 7 watched/was watching TV in my pyjamas, Marie 8 had/was having a shower and Wendy 9 read/was reading a magazine. Suddenly someone 10 rang/was ringing the doorbell. I 11 looked/was looking out of the window to see who was there. Lucas 12 stood/was standing on the step. I 13 went/was going to the door but I 14 didn't open/wasn't opening it. I said 'Hello?' and he said 'Hello, I've come for lunch.' Oh no! He'd got the wrong day!!

We 15 got/were getting dressed in three minutes! Luckily we 16 had/were having enough food, and he seemed to enjoy it. How was your weekend? Love Annette



Read this newspaper article and put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense, past simple or past continuous.

# An honest customer

Yesterday Jon Atkins 1
Harpers' Art Gallery at the end of the
afternoon. He 2 (want) to buy a
present for his mother. It 3 (be)
nearly closing time and owner Michael Harper
4 (count) the money. Quickly Jon
5(choose) a small picture and Mr
Harper 6 (wrap) it for him.
While 7 he (wait) for his bus, Jon
8 (decide) to look at the picture
again. In the parcel he 9 (find)
£500 in cash as well as the picture. He

10 (run) back to the shop. It was
closed so Jon 11 (look) through
the window.
Michael Harper 12 (search)
under the counter, and his assistants
13 (look) in all the cupboards
and drawers. 'I 14 (knock) on the
window and 15 (wave) the
money at them' said Jon.
'I was so happy,' said Mr Harper. 'It's
wonderful to know that there are honest
people like Jon.'

# D Exam practice

#### Grammar focus task

Look at the Writing Part 3 task below. What tense is used in the first sentence of the story? Here are some sentences which can follow. Put the verbs into the correct tense.

A man 1 ...... (walk) slowly towards the café. He 2 ...... (carry) a huge box. Suddenly he 3 ...... (stop) and 4 ..... (look) around him. A woman follow) him. He 6 ..... (drop) the box and 7 ..... (run) towards the café.

Now think about your story. You can finish the story above or write your own story. Write down some ideas. Use these questions to help you:

Who are the people in your story?

What were they doing in the market square?

What happened?

How does your story end?

Which tenses will you use?

Now do the exam task below.

## **Writing Part 3**

- Your English teacher has asked you to write a story.
- Your story must begin with this sentence:
   One day last week I was sitting in a café in the market square.
- Write your story in about 100 words.

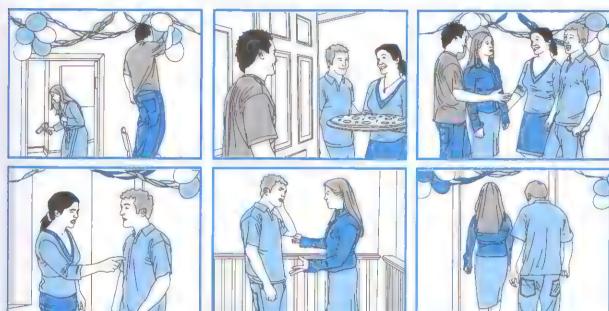
# Present periect and past simple

present perfect and past simple; have gone and have been



# A Context listining

James shares a flat with his sister Annie. James is having a birthday party. Look at the pictures and guess what happened.



- You are going to hear some conversations at the birthday party. How does Garry know Annie? What happens at the end?
- Listen again and complete the sentences below.

1	I all the balloons up yet.	6	I Annie last week at the cinema.
2	I still my hair.	7	She there since April.
3	I it this morning.	8	I in the cinema for you on Saturday.
4	you two already?	9	But I just her!
5	I there for two months.	10	She an hour ago

- Look at your answers to A3 and answer these questions.
  - 1 Which sentences are about an action or event in the past which is finished? Which tense is used?
  - 2 Which sentences contain the words yet, still, already and just? Which tense is used?
  - 3 Which sentences contain the words for and since? Which tense is used?

# 1 Urinnear

# Present perfect

We form the present perfect with has/have + past participle.

The past participle

- for regular verbs ( $want \rightarrow wanted$ ) and a few irregular verbs ( $make \rightarrow made$ ) is the same as the past simple.
- for most irregular verbs is different from the past simple (break  $\rightarrow$  broke, broken; go  $\rightarrow$  went, gone). (See p.viii.)

I/you/we/they have + past participle
he/she/it has + past participle
I/you/we/they have not (haven't) + past participle
he/she/it has not (hasn't) + past participle
Have I/you/we/they + past participle ...?
Has he/she/it + past participle ...?

They've arrived.

He hasn't arrived.

Has it arrived?



We:

NAT

H

diffe

Present perfect and past simple (for past simple forms see Unit 5)

We use the present perfect **not** the past simple

- for past events when the exact time is not important, but the result is interesting now: They have moved to another town. (= They don't live here now.)
  - we spassed not draw grest (as She can drive to work.)

The bus has arrived. (= We can get onto it.)

 for a period of time beginning in the past and continuing to now (often with since and for):

You have worked very hard.

some time in the past → now | You've worked very hard.

I've worked there for two months.

I've worked there are a Mill of Still work there now.)

We use the past simple **not** the present perfect

• for past events at a particular time:

They moved in July.

She passed her de presins restrant

The bus arrived at six.

 for a period of time beginning and ending in the past (sometimes with for):

You worked very hard last year.

last year now

You worked very hard.

She worked at the cinema for ten months.

( But an docari work incre now)

• not with still and yet and in questions with vet:

I still haven't dried my hair. (= it's wet) I haven't put the balloons up yet. (= I want to - they're on the floor)

Have the guests arrived vet?

- ▲ Still goes before the verb and yet goes after it.
- for questions asking how long until now: How long have you known Annie?

- for actions and events started in the past which are finished, often with ago:
  - I dried my hair half an hour ago. (= it was wet but it's dry now)
  - I didn't put the halloons up. (= because I decided not to have a party)
- for questions asking when: When did you meet?



## Other uses of the present perfect

We use the present perfect

- with just for an event a short time before now: I've just met her. (= a few minutes ago)
- with adverbs already, before, ever and never, meaning 'before now' (see also Unit 2): We've already met. Has he ever met her? We've met before.
- with superlatives (see Unit 3): You make the best pizza I've ever eaten.
- after the expressions the first/last etc. time: That's the second time you've asked me.





## Have gone and have been

A To go has two forms in the present perfect: have gone and have been. The meanings are different.



He's been to the shops. (= He went there and then returned home.)



She's gone to the city centre. (= She went there and she's there now.)



## C Grammar exercises

Rhiannon is preparing for a trip abroad with her friend Ellen. Look at the list she made yesterday evening and then complete the email she has sent to Ellen, using the present perfect.

To do

photocopy passport /

collect travellers' cheques /

buy money belt /

check camera X

choose ciothes /

pack rucksack X

phone Granny /

see my cousins and say goodbye /

find my address book" X Elien look?

get coach ticket X

Hi Ellen
Are you ready? I am, almost!
Today 1 I is shorteened my see it, 2 I
my travellers' cheques and 3 I a money
belt. 4 I my camera, but 5 I
my clothes. 6 I my rucksack. I can do that
tomorrow. 7 I Granny and 8 I
my cousins and 9 I goodbye to them. One
problem: 10 I still my address book. 11
(you) for it in your flat?
Phone me if you find it. I'm going to the coach station
now because I 12 my ticket to the airport.
See you tomorrow evening at the check-in desk!
XX R
/// 1

A film has just won a prize. Journalist Ali has interviewed the director, Mike, and the star, Nika, for his magazine. Fill in the gaps using the verbs in brackets in the present perfect or the past simple.

	TE WINING	13	
Ali: Mike: Ali:	How long 1	Mika	I hope so.
Nika:	to make a film together?  Oh, very quickly.  We 4	Ali:	And 10
	That was frightening! Yes. We 6	Mike:	Well congratulations, on this one. Thank you. Lots of people 12



Complete each sentence with a word or phrase from the box.

	igo ince	already still	ever when	for yet	how long	just	never
1	I do	n't want	to ewim	now he	coure I <sup>†</sup> tre	บรา	had lunch
2					ouse		
3							esn't enjoy sp
4						one do	con t chijoy op
5	-					f the sw	imming team
6					Δ111000411111010¢01194119γε110φ		0
7					e theatre cor		
8							oing to Corfu.
9					•	_	or is this you
10					l me the mo		_
11							n't start work
Lo	ok at	each na	ir of sen	tences.	Mark S if th	eir mea	ning is the sa
		e you ev					
					e recently?	D	
2					summer.		
	She	didn't w	ork here	after th	ne summer		
3	I've	been to	London (	twice th	is year.		
					ndon		
4	This	is the m	ost expe	nsive h	oliday I've e	ver had	
	I've	never ha	d such a	n expe	nsive holiday	before	
5	My	father ha	ısn't beei	n to the	theatre for	ten year	rs.
	My	father di	dn't go te	o the th	eatre ten ye	ars ago.	402404500044004
6	We's	ve alread	y seen th	nis film.			
	We'v	ve seen tl	his film 1	before.	**********		
7	He s	till hasn	t read th	at bool	ς.		
	Hel	nasn't rea	ad that b	ook yet	0 1014011110111011		
8	This	is the se	cond tin	ne I've	visited Crete	4	
	Pve	been to (	Crete on	ce befor	e		

# D las sudis

#### **Writing Part 1**

Here are some sentences about a visit to a new sports centre. For each question, complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

Use no more than three words.

#### A This task tests grammar from the rest of the book as well as the grammar in this unit.

- 6	Ev.	ar	ni	ale	

- O This is the first time I've been to this sports centre.
  - I've never been to this sports centre before.
- 1 The old sports centre isn't as big as the new one.

The new sports centre is ..... the old one.

2 The sports centre doesn't have a swimming pool.

The sports centre hasn't ...... a swimming pool.

3 They're still building the squash courts.

They ...... finished building the squash courts yet.

4 My friend started work here three weeks ago.

My friend ...... here for three weeks.

5 He finds the work enjoyable here.

He ..... working here.

#### Grammar focus task

Check your answers. Now look at these pairs of sentences. Are they the same or different?

1 I've never been to this sports centre before.

I've already been to this sports centre. .....

2 They haven't finished building the squash courts yet.

They've just finished building the squash courts.

3 I haven't been to the sports centre yet.

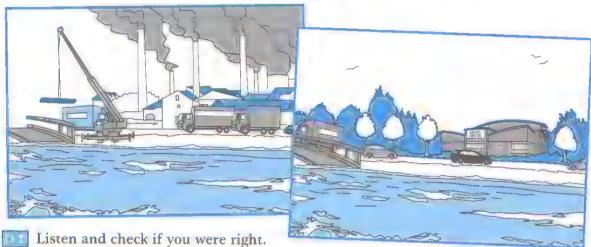
This is the first time I've been to the sports centre.

# Past perfect

past perfect and past simple; used to

# Gintact Interns

You are going to hear Peter talking on the radio about a city he visited last week. Here are two pictures of the city. Which is from last week? Which is from seven years ago?



Why did Peter go there? What changes did he see?

- Listen again and complete the sentences below. Stop the recording if you need to.
  - 1 Well, last week I ...... my home city.
  - 2 When I ...... his work for the day ...
  - 3 When we ...... lunch, we ..... by the river.
  - 4 The riverside ..... the factory area ...
  - 5 There didn't ...... a sports centre in the city.
  - 6 The engineers ...... it the year I ......
  - 7 I ...... to become an engineer ...
  - 8 I ...... all my old friends.
- Look at your answers to A3 and answer these questions.
  - 1 Look at sentences 4 and 5 and complete this statement. We use ..... to talk about things that were different in the past.
  - 2 Look at the other sentences. Which contain two different verb forms? ..... In these sentences did one event happen before the other?

#### **B** Grammar

# **B1** Past perfect

We form the past perfect with had + past participle. (See notes on past participles in Unit 6 and the table of irregular verbs on p. viii.)

I/you/he/she/it/we/they had + past participle
I/you/he/she/it/we/they had not (hadn't) + past participle
Had I/you/he/she/it/we/they + past participle ...?

We'd eaten lunch.

hadn t caten

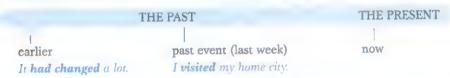
Hud eaten



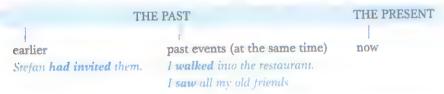
# Past perfect and past simple

We use the past perfect

• to talk about something that happened before a past event: Last week I visited my home city. It had changed a lot.



I walked min the restaurant and I saw all need to provide some had invited then to one is



• in sentences that have when + past simple, to show that one event happened before the other:

When I arrived, Stefan had finished his work. =	1 He finished work
	2 (later) I arrived.

The two actions are separate.

Compare:

When I arrived, Stefan stopped work. = I arrived and he stopped work at that time.

The two actions are probably connected.

#### Past perfect not past simple

We always use the past perfect not the past simple with already, ever, never and just when we mean before a time in the past:

I'd just started the real left (not They just at a red theyer helt) had already decided to become an engineer and Labranty decided

I'd never seen anything like it. (not I never saw)

Already, ever, never and just go between the auxiliary and the main verb.





#### used to

I/you/he/she/it/we/they used to + verb I/you/he/she/it/we/they did not (didn't) use to + verb Did I/you/he/she/it/we/they use to + verb...?

I used to live in the city. They didn't use to live in the city. Did she use to live in the city? We make negatives and questions with did like a regular verb in the past simple (see Unit 5).

△ There is no present tense of used to (**not** *Huse to* etc.). We use the present simple (see Unit 4). I meet my friends on Saturday evenings. not five to meet on the training the name of the n

We use the verb used to to talk about the past when we want to emphasise that things are different now:

It used to be the factory area. (= It isn't the factory area now.)

THE PAST It used to be the factory area.

The factories were knocked down.

It's a park.

NOW





I used to watch the engineers. (= I don't watch them now.) We used to see a lot of big lorries in the city. (= We don't see them now.) There didn't use to be a sports centre in the city. (= There is now.) Did there use to be less traffic? (= There's a lot of traffic now, but I want to know if it has increased.)

#### C Grammar exercises

Complete this email by putting the verbs in brackets into the past perfect.

Hi Billy	
Well, I'm home from Africa. The late flight from Paris caused some problems at first but the	
holiday was great	
Because 1	
(we/ask) the holiday company to book us seats on the bus to the city centre to meet the tour	
manager. Our plane was an hour late and we ran through the airport to the car park but when	
we arrived the bus 3 (just/leave). We got a taxi to the main square and found	
the company's local office, but the staff 4 (already/go) home for the day.	
We 5 (not/bring) our mobiles, because they don't work in that country. At last we	
found a post office and luckily it 6 (not/shut) yet, so we called the company's head	
office in Canada.	
In ten minutes the tour manager was with us. He 7 (go) to the airport to meet us,	
because he 8 (realise) our plane was late, but we 9 (not/see) him.	
Anyway, he took us to the hotel he 10 (book) for us and bought us dinner.	
So everything was fine in the end. And our trip to the jungle was amazing!! I'll show you the	
photos when I see you.	
XXXX Julie	

In each of these sentences, one of the verbs should be in the past perfect. Underline
the verb and write the correction at the end.

- 1 I wanted to have a shower when I got home, but my sister just had a bath and there wasn't any hot water.
- 2 The concert started when we got to the theatre, so we missed the first two songs. ...
- 3 I couldn't tell my teacher about the film because I never saw it......
- 4 Freya alan't fin.sh breakfast when I arrived, so I had a coffee while she ate ner toast ......
- 5 The children were very excited about flying because they were never in a plane ......
- 6 Colin didn't know the poem but the other students already studied it.
- 7 We just visited Japan so we told our friends some good places to visit when they went there



Fill in the gaps in this conversation with the correct form of used to and a verb from the box.

be		not go	have	not have	live	know	travel	walk	
Mir	ıa:	There's	Dahlia i	n her dad's s	sports ca	ar. Where	do they	get thei	r money from?
Sara	a:	Don't yo	ou know	P Her family	won th	e lottery.			
Mir	ıa:	Wow!							
Sara	a:	I knew l	her befor	re that, thou	gh. Her	family 1	4° C 1 *	F	She
				to scho					
Mir	ıa:	3		(you) t	hem ver	y well?			
Sara	a:		*	ise they 5					ather grew all their
Mir	ıa:	-		day a lot no				-	oad then?
Sara	a:	. –					`		
Mir	ıa:		very luc						
Sara	a:	Mmm, h	out they	8		more fr	iends.		
	-			e to show w s you need					e the word in
1	Patr	ick	( *	THE PRO	ry fra t	(pho	tos) but h	e loves 1	using his new camera.
2	You	**************				(lazy) b	ut you're	working	very hard this term.
3	I	*****************		***************************************		***************************************	***************************************	(slim	) but I've lost weight.
4	Bob	by			****************		(a 1	bike) bu	t he drives a car now.
5	Ber	tie	41441114411144414444		(m	y brother	) but the	y've bec	ome friends recently.
6	Nor	a		**************************************	(the cir	iema) vei	ry often l	out she s	sees lots of films now.
7	Му	sister				4. 41747414444144744	(shy	) but sh	e enjoys parties now.
8	We					(spor	t) but we	often p	lay tennis these days.
9	Joai	nna	****************	, ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	(a v	egetaria:	n) but sh	e had a s	sausage for breakfast.
10	The	y			(the city	(centre)	but their	new ho	use is in the country.
Wri	te t	rue sent	ences al	out when y	ou were	e very yo	ung usin	g used to	o/didn't use to + verb.
1		(tr +	a to k	my enmerch	r 3	militer		***************	
2	******					**********		<	
3				·		*		4 344 4634 -0444	
4					1414+ 141411111111111	41444441144144414		,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
5									

## Reading Part 5

Read the text below and choose the correct word for each space. For each question, mark the correct letter A, B, C or D.

Election.		
Exa	HID	IU.

0 A takes

B introduces

C offers

**D** brings

#### The Roman Baths

The city of Bath (0) ..... its name from the public baths (1) ..... were built there by the Romans. By the middle of the first century, they'd already (2) ...... planning the baths. The biggest bath, (3) ..... as the Great Bath, was (4) ...... a swimming pool. In the next 300 years, the Romans (5) ...... the baths with changing rooms, a sauna and other smaller baths. They used to come there not only to wash (6) ...... also to meet friends. The baths were, in (7) ......., at the heart of Roman life. This way (8) ......life ended in the year 400 when the Romans left Britain. By that time, they'd built towns, roads and bridges across Britain. The Great Bath was discovered again in the eighteenth century after being buried for years and the baths then (9) ...... as famous as they had been in Roman times. Many tourists (10) ..... visit the baths today.

2 A began 3 A named 4 A like 5 A joined 6 A and 7 A turn 8 A from

9 A became

1 A who

**B** what B begun **B** called B as

B case

B of

**B** expanded

**B** developed

- C which C begin C titled
- **D** where **D** beginning **D** known
- C same C added C so
- D similar **D** grew
- B because C fact C to
- D but **D** place D for

- 10 A already B just
- C first

C changed

**D** turned D still

Answer the questions with full sentences.

- 1 What had the Romans done by the middle of the first century? ......
- 2 What did they use to do at the baths? ......
- 3 What had the Romans done in Britain by the year 400? .....



# **Context listening**



You are going to hear some advertisements and announcements on a local radio station. Look at the pictures and match them to what you hear.







Listen to the first advertisement again and complete these sentences using the places in the box. You sometimes need to add the.

Alps Andes Atlantic Ocean Greece Lake Garda New York Rome Sahara Desert

- 1 You can go climbing in the Alps or ....... 2 We're not suggesting sailing across ...... but you can sail around the coast of 3 You can watch the sun set over ........ 4 Go on one of our city breaks to ..... or .... or ..... Do we use the before the names of: countries? ...... cities? ...... mountain ranges? ...... deserts? ...... lakes? ...... oceans? ....... Listen to the second advertisement again. What does he talk about? jeans pyjamas shirts shorts shoes socks trousers
- Which words above can you use only in the plural?
- Listen to the announcement again. Complete these sentences.
  - 1 The ...... on 555FM is perfect for a Friday afternoon.
  - 2 Are you sitting in your car in the .....?
  - 3 We bring you the latest ..... every hour.

Look at the nouns you wrote. Can you make them plural?

#### Grammar

#### Plurals

Some things we wear or use are always plural. They are made of two parts which cannot be separate: trousers, pyjamas, shorts, jeans, tights, pants, sunglasses, glasses, scissors. They have a plural verb:

My trousers are new. (not My trouser is new.) These shorts are dirty. (not This short is dirty.)

Other things we wear can be singular. They are made of two parts which can be separate: shoe/shoes, sock/socks, earring/earrings.

⚠ The word clothes is never singular: I hough some new inits, (not I hought a new clothe)





#### A(n), the and no article

	means:	use for:	use with:
A(n)	one of many: My sister works in a cinema.	new information: My friend was talking to a girl.	countable* nouns (cinema, girl)
The	the only one(s) or the particular one(s):  The cinema opened last week.	things already introduced:  The girl was very angry.  when we already know what we are talking about:  Where's the money I lent you?	countable* nouns (cinema, girl) and uncountable* nouns (money)
No article	all: Cinemas show films.	things in a general sense: Money makes people happy I like music.	plural countable* nouns (cinemas) and uncountable* nouns (money, music)

\*See B3 below.



T.N.

Ti

-



## Countable and uncountable nouns

Countable nouns (e.g. shoe, passport)

- can be singular with a, the: a passport, the phone I've got a problem. (not I've got problem.)
- can be plural with no article, some or the: shoes, some cars, the cars
- have a singular or plural verb: The con is near The cons are net

Uncountable nouns (e.g. air, bread, food, help, ice, music, money, pollution, rain, sand, travel):

- use the, some or no article but not a: the money, some money, money (not a money)
- cannot be plural: money (not moneys), music (not musics)
- always have a singular verb: Tremas is perfet anot the means we perfect

△ These nouns are usually uncountable in English (but are countable in some other languages): advice, furniture, hair, homework, information, luck, luggage, money, news, traffic, travel (but trip and journey are countable), weather, work.

A news ends in s but is uncountable.

When we want to count things which are uncountable nouns, we use words like a bag, a bottle, a box, a cup, a glass, a packet, a piece:

I need a bottle of water. (not I need a water.)

#### Many drinks can be countable or uncountable:

Would you like a coffee? (= a cup of coffee)

I'd like two coffees and a tea, please. (= 2 cups of coffee + 1 cup of tea)

eight some coffee in the marker (= spale to) coffee





#### The or no article

#### Places

There is no article before

- continents, most countries, states, cities, towns, villages: Europe, Italy, London, Florida but we say the Netherlands.
- buildings and places that use the name of their town: Manchester Airport, Cardiff Station, Edinburgh Castle, Durham University

A We say at school, at work, at home and in bed.

#### We put the before

- names of countries that include a word like Republic or States: the United States, the Czech Republic
- oceans, seas and rivers: the Partie Ocean, the Detaile but not before lakes: Lake Ordana
- regions: the Far East, the north
- groups of islands: the Philippines
- deserts and mountain ranges: the Kalamar the Hardinas but not before one mountain: Mount Everest
- the environment: the sea, the case, the season the beard, the courses, the more tains the hills, the sky, the sun, the moon

#### Tobs

We say I'm a doctor. (not I'm doctor.)

#### Entertainment

We listen to the radio but we watch television.

We plut the guitar (a musical instrument) but we plut terms (a sport).

We go to the cinema, the theatre etc.

#### Travel

We travel by train, bus etc. (not by the train.)

#### Meals

We have lunch, dinner etc. (not the lunch etc.)



# C Grammar exercises

Which of the plural words in the box can we also use in the singular form?

boots bracelets clothes earrings gloves jeans shorts socks shoes tights

Look at this notice from a holiday cottage. For each of the underlined words, add s if it is plural countable.

# Rose Cottage, Hobbs Farm, Newton, Near Norwich

#### Welcome

To help you enjoy your stay, we offer some 1 advice ...... for 2 visitor .............

If you want some 9 information ...... about 10 travel ..... and 11 traffic ..... in the Ridby area, try the local radio station.

#### Notes

If you want to listen to 12 music please remember to keep the volume down. Please use only garden 13 chair in the garden. Do not take any sitting-room 14 furniture outside.

Please be careful not to bring any 15 sand ...... or 16 stone ...... into the cottage from the beach.

Thank you - enjoy your stay!



Read these short newspaper articles. Add the, a or an or nothing to the gaps.

# THAT WAS LUCKY!



# **NO MORE FOREIGN HOLIDAYS?**

3

# THE WRONG JOB

7 ..... cinema, said that he was sorry.





#### There is one mistake in each of these sentences. Find them and correct them.

- 1 I want to buy some trouser! so I'll meet you by the new clothes shop.
- 2 Tom Cruise was wearing a black jacket, black jean and black shoes.
- 3 I'm happy with a furniture in my room, but I want to change the curtains.
- 4 I'm sending this card to wish you a good luck for your driving test.
- 5 My cousin's just been on a travel round France.
- 6 I listen to musics when I'm working so I feel more relaxed.
- 7 The weather was marvellous so we went to beach and swam in the sea.
- 8 I'll go to the swimming-pool for some informations about diving lessons.
- 9 If I send you a money, will you buy me some earrings like yours?
- 10 We saw some lovely old towns in Czech Republic on our last holiday.

# D Exam practice

#### **Listening Part 3**

Before you listen, look at questions 1-6 in the notebook below. Which of the spaces need a noun?

You will hear a tour guide talking to some tourists about the town of Medbury. For each question, fill in the missing information in the numbered space.

888888888888888888888888888888888888888
Tour of Medbury
The craft market has been in Medbury since (1)
The guide recommends buying (2) for presents.
The shoe factory is now a (3)
The nearest bank is next to the (4)
The fastest way to travel from London to Medbury is by (5)
(6)is available in the kiosk.

#### Grammar focus task

Look at the words you put in the spaces.

- 1 Which words are nouns?
- 2 Which of these are countable?
- 3 Which are uncountable?
- 4 How many words did you write in (5)?

# Determiners and pronouns 1

some/any; somebody/anybody etc.; much/many etc.



# A Context listening

Look at the four people in the pictures below. They've all left a message on Mia's answerphone. Where is each person? Why do you think they're phoning?









- Listen to the four messages. Were you right?
- Listen again and answer these questions.

	·
1	Why doesn't he need a taxi? because he hasn - 11 mar your
2	What does he offer to buy?
3	Why is he surprised?
4	Who has he already rung?
5	What has she found in the newspaper?
6	Why is she worried?
7	Who is coming to the picnic?
8	What should Mia bring?
	2 3 4 5 6 7

9 What has Roseanne bought?

- In each message, you hear people say the same thing in two different ways. Complete the two sentences so they mean the same. Listen again if you want.
  - 1 I haven't got \_\_\_\_\_\_ luggage. = I've only got a \_\_\_\_\_ small bags.
    2 There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ here. = There's \_\_\_\_\_ here.
    3 I've found \_\_\_\_\_ = I haven't found \_\_\_\_\_ experience. = I haven't got \_\_\_\_\_ experience
  - 5 ...... of people are coming. = There'll be a ...... people.
  - 6 I bought a ...... of cakes. = I got ..... cakes.

# 1 Brammar

## B1 Some and any

We use some and any before both countable and uncountable nouns.

		Councible	(Free natable// f
	a/some	14 x == a log some = x	tr = some = z
	any	He hasn't got any hags.	He hasn't got any luggage.
la .	any	Has he got any bags?	Has he got any luggage?

We often use some in questions which are requests or offers:

Can you buy some crisps?

Shall I buy some food?

No means 'not any'.

He's got no bags = He hasn't got any bags. He's got no laggage = He hasn't got any baggage

A not He has any bags



# Somebody/ anybody/ nobody/ everybody etc.

somebody (someone)	something	somewhere
not anybody (not anyone) nobody (no-one)	not anything / nothing	not anywhere nowhere
anybody (anyone)	anything	anywhere

Well foul somewhere quiet Hare I for anything I man't found anything

A not anything = nothing; not anybody = nobody; not anywhere = nowhere:

There is a anybody have there nobody have (not there is a trained there)

⚠ Everybody, everyone, everything and everywhere have a plural meaning but they are followed by a singular verb:

Where is everybody?

Everything is organised.

(See Unit 10 for every and all, every + noun.)



# Much / many / a lot / a few / a little

We use a lot of / lots of with both countable and uncountable nouns.

We use a few (= more than two but less than a lot) and many with countable nouns but we use a little and much with uncountable nouns.

He's got a lot of / lots of bags.
He's only got a few bags.
He's only got a little luggage.
Has he got many bags?
Has he got much luggage?

Has he got much luggage?

We can also use a couple of (= two) and several (= more than a few) with countable nouns:

He's za a couple of several bags.

(See Unit 28 for too much/too many.)



## Grammar exercises



Read this conversation between some art students and their teacher. Fill in the gaps with a, an, some, any or no.

Rex: Hi, I'm Rex. Are you 1 \_\_\_\_ new student? Yes, I'm Jenny. I haven't been to 2 ...... art class before. Jenny: Rex: The classes in this college are good. Have you brought 3 .... equipment? I've got 4 ...... brushes and 5 ...... pens, but I haven't got 6 ...... lenny: paint. I didn't know what kind to buy. Rev: That's OK. I can lend you 7 ..... paint. Jenny: Thanks very much. Now we need 8 ...... paper. Let's ask the teacher. Excuse me, is there Rex: 9 ...... thick paper? There's 10 ..... paper in the drawer because we used it all last week.

Teacher: Oh. Well, I'll fetch some from the store cupboard now.



Read this short story and underline the correct words.

Last month my husband and I went to a wedding in the north of the country. We needed to stop for a night on the journey. We didn't have 1 anywhere/nowhere to stay, so I rang the tourist information office to find a bed and breakfast. I asked for 2 somewhere/everywhere near the main road and was given the address of a small inn.

When we arrived it was almost dark. The inn was an old-fashioned place with a garden that 3 anyone/no-one had tidied for a long time. The front door was locked. We soon began to feel that 4 nobody/somebody didn't want visitors. When we rang the bell 5 anybody/nobody answered, but we heard a noise inside the building. We called out but 6 notbing/everything happened. After several minutes we decided to look for 7 anywhere/somewhere else to stay. We found a modern hotel in the nearest village. When we asked about the old inn, 8 everybody/somebody in the hotel was really surprised. 9 Anybody/Nobody knew it.

'It's on the main road, just before this village,' we explained.

At last the hotel owner asked her father, a very old man. 'There was an inn many years ago, but it burned down,' he said.

'10 No-one/Anyone goes there now.'

After the wedding, we drove past the place again. There wasn't 11 nothing/anything there. It seemed like a dream. But we know we saw 12 something/anything. We just don't know what it was.



	1 I didn't bring my boots because I didn't have any space in my suitcase.
	I didn't bring my boots because I had no space in my suitcase
	2 Is there anything in that box?
	Does that box have anything in it?
	3 Has everyone in the class read this book?
	Has anyone in the class read this book?
	4 There's nowhere to buy a coffee in the bus station.
	There isn't anywhere to buy a coffee in the bus station
	5 I've got several jobs to do before I go out.
	I don't have much work to do before I go out
	6 We're looking everywhere for our passports.
	We don't know where our passports are
	7 Everything in that shop is expensive.
	Nothing in that shop is cheap
	8 Did you eat anything at the barbecue?
	Did you eat everything at the barbecue?
	9 Do you want some help with your homework?
	Would you like any help with your homework?
ı I	Look at the nouns in this box. Which are countable and which are uncountable?
	CDs homework money fruit magazines parties jewellery T shirts
	Which of the following words can you use with countable nouns? Which can you use with uncountable nouns?
	a couple of a few a little lots of many much several
7	Write some true sentences about yourself or your friends using words from the two boxes
	1 i policint south it work i work south it work
	2
	3
	4
	5
	6

Look at each pair of sentences. Write S if their meaning is the same and D if it is different.

# D Den smaller

#### **Reading Part 3**

Look at the sentences below about a music festival.

Read the text to decide if each sentence is correct or incorrect.

If it is correct, mark A.

If it is incorrect, mark B.

- 1 If you arrive at the same time as last year, the gates will be closed.
- 2 Nobody will be able to buy a ticket on arrival.
- 3 Everyone who has bought a ticket will receive it in the post by 14 August.
- 4 You need to prove who you are when you get to the festival.
- 5 One adult with a ticket can take several children into the festival.
- 6 Arrange to meet friends near the gates if you have their tickets.
- 7 You will receive a souvenir programme when you show your ticket.
- 8 You should bring enough food to eat over the weekend.
- 9 You can find signs in Shipton to tell you the way to the festival.
- 10 There is a small charge for the buses which go direct to the festival site.



#### **Tickets**

Tickets will be sent out by post between 1 August and 14 August to people living in the UK. For those living abroad, tickets have to be collected from an office in Willesbrook. See below for more details.

There will be no tickets on sale at the site. Please do not come without a ticket, and if you know anyone who is planning to come without a ticket, tell them not to.

When you arrive, your name will be put on your ticket so don't forget to bring a passport or identity card. After that, the ticket is yours and cannot be given to someone else to use. All children aged twelve and under are admitted free but they must be with an adult who holds a ticket. There is no limit to the number of children who can attend with an adult. Please note that there is lots of entertainment provided for kids but they must stay with an adult at all times.

-)

If you have bought tickets for friends, give them to them before they leave for the Festival. It is impossible to meet anyone at the gates because of the crowds. If you have to meet up, do it at least five miles away from the Festival site.

#### What's on?

Click on Events below for information. Everyone who has a ticket will be given a free souvenir programme. You can buy extra programmes at Information Points.

#### What shall I bring?

Don't bring much luggage. You need a tent and don't forget suncream and a torch. You can eat really well and cheaply on the site, so it really isn't necessary to carry food.

#### Where is the site?

The village of Shipton is three kilometres from the site. There are signs from Willesbrook which is the nearest town. Please follow these signs which take you around Shipton. No traffic should go through Shipton itself which has very narrow streets.

#### How do I get there?

If possible, leave your car at home because there'll be a lot of traffic. There are coaches and trains to Willesbrook. From there you can take a Festival bus. The price of the bus fare is included in your Festival ticket so only those who can show a Festival ticket will be allowed onto these buses.

#### Grammar focus task

A	nswer these questions about the text.
1	What does the website have?
2	What is provided for kids?
3	What is everyone given?
4	What should you not carry?
5	Why should you leave your car at home?
L	ook at your answers.
W	hich nouns are countable? Which are uncountable?
Cá	an you put a few in front of any of these nouns?
C	an you put a little in front of any of these nouns?

# A Context listening

Look at the pictures below. They show a 'makeover' TV programme. What do you think 'makeover' means? What happened in this programme?



- The room belongs to Kirsty. You are going to hear her talking on the radio about her room. Does she like it now?
- Listen again and complete these sentences.
  - 1 ...... of them had a different job to do.
  - 2 ...... colour was OK with me ...
  - 3 ..... of the colours looks very nice.
  - 4 ..... teenagers watch TV ...
  - 5 ..... people have a TV in their room ...
  - 6 ..... room in our house has a TV.
  - 7 ..... bedrooms have fridges in them ...
  - 8 ..... of them are really nice.
  - 9 ..... of them are modern.
  - 10 ..... of them want to copy it!

A4	Look	at t	the	words	vou	wrote	in	A3.

Which words are about more than two things or people? @ach
Which words are about two things or people?

#### Grammar

# This, that, these and those



that book.

We can use this/these and that/those as adjectives:

This T shirt suits me. (I'm wearing it.)

That T shirt suits you. (You're wearing it, not me.)

or as pronouns:

This is a good concert. (I'm at the concert now)

That was a good concert. (I'm not at the concert now.)

When we don't want to repeat a countable noun, we use one:

Which picture do you like? That/This one. The one of a sunset.

Which pictures do you line Those These ones The ones of Von Gogh

We often use the one(s) with an adjective:

Which chair do you want? The red one.



## All, most, some, no and none











some



#### Things/people in general

All + noun:

All teenagers watch TV.

Most/some + noun:

Most people have a TV in their bedroom.

not office of surgion office of I are experimentarion

No + noun without the:

No hedroom it is to be or No hedrooms I a fridges.

#### Things/people in a particular group

All (of) + the/my/this etc. + noun:

All (of) the teenagers went home early. (the teenagers = a particular group of teenagers)

Most/some of + the/my/this etc. + noun:

Most of my friends like it. (my friends = a

pro . . . . . . . . . . not there our strongets

None of + the + noun:

None of the paintings is a control or None of the paintings are modern.

All/most/some/none + of + pronoun:

All/Most/Some/None of them were very old.

All of them (not All them)



#### Both/either/neither



We use both/neither/either when we talk about two things. We can use them

• with a noun or pronoun:

Both lights are nuce or Both (of) the lights them are nuce splural verby
Either colour is OK. (singular noun and verb) or
Either of the colours/them is/are OK. (singular or plural verb)
Neither colour looks good. (singular noun and verb) or
Neither of the colours them looks look zooi (singular or plural verb)

or alone:

Which colour would you prefer 'Neither (of them). Either (of them). Which picture do you like? Both (of them).

All and both can go with a verb:

They're all mad.

We've both finished.

(See Unit 30 for both ... and, either ... or.)



# **Each** and every

Each and every often have the same meaning: Every/each star has a light in it.

but sometimes they have different meanings.

Each = separate things or people in a group:

We tried each colour on the wall. (= The colours were different.)

Every = all the people or things in a group together:

Every room in the hotel has a TV. (= The rooms are the same.)

A We use a singular verb after each and every.

We use each/every + singular noun:

Every/each room has a TV.

We use each **not** every with of + noun or pronoun:

! ach of the people Each of them had a different with (not I extend the people - I very of them --- it different poin)

▲ Every and all often have a similar meaning:

Every wall is blue. (singular verb)

All the walls are blue. (plural verb)

But when we talk about time, they have different meanings:

They go to a different place every week. (= regularly)
They spent all week in my room. (= one complete week)



## **Grammar exercises**

Ian:

## C1 Underline the correct words in this conversation between Nyree and Ian.

Nyree: Can we stop here a moment? I want to

look in the window of 1 this/that shoe

shop. I need to buy some new shoes. OK. But 2 these/those ones you're

wearing look really good. And they go

with 3 this/that jacket.

Nyree: Yes, but 4 these/those aren't very

comfortable now the summer is here. I'd like something lighter for 5 this/that

warm weather.

What about 6 these/those, at the back Ian:

of the window?

Nyree: Mm, they look cool, but I don't like

the colour. I prefer 7 the one / the ones

in front of them.

Let's go in and you can try them on. Ian:





# Look at this table of information about language courses in Upton and complete the sentences below. Use all of, most of, some of or none of.

# Language Schools in Upton - a quick guide

	Courses for children	Qualified teachers	Library 	Evening classes	Sports facilities	Weekend activities	City centre
Abbey Languages	1	<b>√</b>		1		1	
Brown's School		<b>√</b>	<b>√</b>	1		1	<b>√</b>
Cottle's College	1	1		<b>✓</b>			<b>/</b>
Drake's Academy	1	1	1	1			<b>✓</b>
Egmont Institute	1	1		<b>/</b>			<b>/</b>

1	of the schools in Upton offer courses for children.
2	the schools employ qualified teachers.
3	the schools have libraries.
4	them offer evening classes.
5	the schools have sports facilities for their students.
6	them organise weekend activities for their students.
7	the schools are in the city centre.
Th	ere is one mistake in each of these sentences. Underline it and write the correction.
1	We had a drink but none food was available
2	Neither these jackets fits me
3	We stopped for a meal because both of us was hungry
4	I was surprised that most the people staying in the hotel were Italian.
5	Either of the restaurant you suggested is fine with me
6	He's tidied the garden and put away all chairs.
7	I liked both pairs of jeans, but I chose the black one for the party
8	This was an awful meal we had yesterday. We won't go to that restaurant again.
9	We're having a party for my father and we're inviting all of old friends.
10	Some of airports have several restaurants



Read this hotel brochure and underline the correct word for each question.

# The Regent () (utel



This attractive hotel offers accommodation for families and business visitors. 1 Both/Every groups can find everything they need.

The Main Building has ten luxury rooms and the Garden House has ten family rooms.

- 2 Each/Both buildings have a dining-room. Adult guests and older children may use
- 3 either/every of them at any time. 4 All/Both of them offer the same menu but in the evening children under six may only eat in the Garden House dining-room.
- 5 All/Every bedroom has a DVD and CD player and 6 all/every of them have private bathrooms. The decoration is different in 7 either/each room, and is changed 8 every/all year.

There is a swimming-pool available for 9 *all/both* the guests. It is open on weekday evenings and 10 *both/all* day at weekends.

## D Exam practice

This task tests
grammar from the
rest of the book
as well as the
grammar in
this unit.

#### **Writing Part 1**

Here are some sentences about some twins.

For each question, complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

Use no more than three words.

E		-1	
-va	m	nı	œ.
PV A	1100	ы.	-

- When they were small, the twins spoke a strange language together.
  When they were small, the twins used \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a strange language together.

Look at sentences 2 and 5. Which determiners are there?

Can you follow them with of?

Here are the other determiners from this unit:

both each either most none no some

Can you follow them with of?

# Determiners and pronouns 3

's/of; personal pronouns; possessives; reflexive pronouns; there/it + to be

# A Control Uniteding

'Market Street' is a soap opera which appears on TV every evening. You are going to hear a girl tell her friend what happened last night. Look at the pictures. The end of the story is missing. Can you guess what happened?



- Listen and check if you were right.
- Here are some sentences about the recording. Fill in the gaps with the words in the box. Then listen again and check your answers.

# his her own herself hers their -her his own himself

- 1 Sally lent key to cousin Tony.
- 2 Tony doesn't have ...... flat.
- 3 Tony broke ..... leg.
- 5 Tony was sitting there by ...... when he had an idea.
- 7 Cara really enjoyed .......
- Here are some sentences from the recording. Can you put the apostrophe (') in the correct place?
  - 1 I missed last nights programme.
- 4 He works in the newsagents.

2 Cara is Sallys sister.

- 5 He used Sallys key.
- 3 He wants to leave his parents house.

# I Gr

# Grammar

# B1 Possessive 's/of

We use 's with people and animals:

The boy's bedroom was very untidy. (not the bedroom of the boy)

The dog's teeth are very sharp.

and with time expressions:

I missed last night's programme.

but we usually use of instead of 's with things:

What's the price of that holiday? (not the holiday's price)

Sometimes we don't say the second noun when it is a home or a business:

I stayed at Sally's (= Sally's flat)

He works in the newsagent's. (= the newsagent's shop)

The apostrophe s ('s) goes in a different place for singular and plural nouns:

my consul's triends of one cousin), my consults triends of one cousin)

# Personal pronouns, possessive pronouns and possessive determiners

Subject pronouns:	I/you/he/she/it/we/they	Possessive pronouns:	mine yours/his hers/ours/theirs
Object pronouns:	me/you/him/her it/us, them	Possessive determiners:	my your/his/her/its our their

We use I, you, he etc. for the subject of the verb and we use me, you, him etc. for the object of the verb:

She gave him her key.

He invited them to a party.

We use possessive determiners (my, your, his etc.) before a noun: I went with my friends.

A His means 'of a boy or a man' and her means 'of a girl or a woman':

He sees his girlfriend every night.

She shares a flat with her brother.

We always use my, your etc. with parts of the body and clothes.

Tony broke his leg. (not Tony broke the leg.)

They changed their shoes when they came in.

We use possessive pronouns (mine, yours etc.) without a noun: Give that key to her. It's not yours. (= it's not your key)



This bicycle is **mine**.
This is **my** bicycle.
This bicycle belongs to **me**.

This bicycle is the boy's.
This is the boy's bicycle.
This bicycle belongs to the boy.

It

We can say my friends or some friends of mine (yours/his/hers/ours/theirs etc.) (not some friends of me) We use own to emphasise that something belongs to someone:

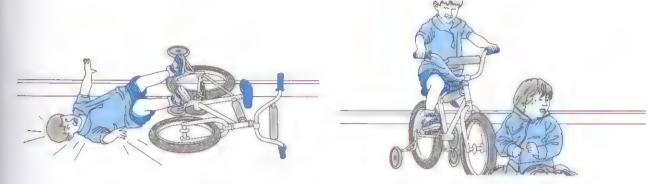
The is a final tis on the teather has been him



#### **Reflexive pronouns**

 $l \rightarrow$  myself, you (singular)  $\rightarrow$  yourself, he  $\rightarrow$  himself, she  $\rightarrow$  herself, it  $\rightarrow$  itself, we  $\rightarrow$  ourselves, you (plural)  $\rightarrow$  yourselves they  $\rightarrow$  themselves

We use myself, yourself etc.



- when the subject and the object are the same person/thing:
  . m hunt hunse; when he jell off his bake him (subject and object was hart)
  but Sam cried when Tim hurt him, (= Sam (object) was hurt)
- with enjoy (your)self, behave (your)self, help (your)self.
   Help yourself to some food.
   Sally really enjoyed herself.

By (your) self means alone. We can also say on (your) own: Sally wanted to be by herself. or on her own.





#### There and it + to be

We use there + to be to say somebody/something exists, especially when we talk about them for the first time:

There's a party in Cara's flat.

There were lots of people in the flat.

Is there a newsagent's near here?

△ We say *There is* before a singular noun and *There are* before a plural noun.

A We can't use it is in the same way as there is. We use it is to talk about something we have already discussed:

There's a newsagent in this street. It's on the corner. (not It's a newsagent in this street. It's on the corner.)

We can use it + to be to talk about time, weather and distance:

It's sunny here and it's nine o'clock in the evening.
It's ten kilometres from here to the city centre.



# C Grammar exercises

# C1 Complete this table.

That is (1)	That bicycle is mine.	That bicycle belongs to me.
That is my father's jacket.	That jacket is (2) my father's.	That jacket belongs to (3)
These are our skis.	These skis (4)	These skis (5)
Is this your CD?	Is this CD (6)?	Does this CD belong to (7)?
This (8)	This (9)	This car belongs to my grandparents.
(10)	(11)	Those videos belong to them.

(10)	1404444444		(11)	Inose videos belong to them.
	Fill in t	he gaps with the	e correct word (me/my/mine, you.	/your/yours etc.).
			ı because I've leftmy walle	
			ix of friends from school	
			nger and thicker than	, ,
			a beard and I didn't recognise	at first.
			old car. My car is new and it's mo	
	-	*	the same. Where did you buy	
7 My mother was really pleased when I told			y pleased when I told t	the news.
	8 Mai	rice can't play t	ennis because he's hurt	back.
	9 Sara	h told	father a lie.	
1	l <b>0</b> Tha	t woman is a nei	ghbour of	our road.
F (	Comple	ete each sentenc	e with the correct reflexive pron	oun.
	1 Hel	p <u>Cursof</u> to	a sandwich and a drink and ther	n take it to the checkout.
	2 Chi	ldren, behave	please.	
			when they fell out of the	tree.
			with Jane because she doesn't lil	

6 The actor looked at ...... in the mirror before he went on stage.

5 I cut ..... when I was making soup.

Fill in the gaps in this email with it's or there is/are.

AAA				
To:	Silva			
Cc:				
Subject:	tomorrow			
Hi Silva				
I'm glad	you can come tomorrow. You can walk to my house from the station as			
(1)	only about 500 metres. (2)some interesting shops on the			
way. My	favourite is the music shop. (3) the best one in town.			
	my house is easy to find. (4) on the corner and (5)			
	dern. Number 54. (6)a garage opposite.			
I hope (7	) sunny so we can have lunch in the garden. (8) a			
	tree we can sit under if (9)hot.			
I can't wait to see you. (10) a train which arrives at 11.				
Love				
Alice				

#### Underline the correct words.

A few years ago my brother, Alan, decided to travel round the world with a friend of (1) his/him called Sam. They flew to Australia because a friend of our (2) fathers'/father's had said they could stay with him. After a few weeks they found a flat because they preferred to be on (3) themselves/their own so they could enjoy (4) them/themselves. My brother met (5) her/his wife in Australia and stayed there. Now they live in a beautiful house. (6) It/There is much bigger than (7) my/mine in London but they invite (8) me/myself there every year. (9) There/It is even a swimming pool and a tennis court. Alan and Sam are still friends although Sam now lives in Africa and his life is very different from (10) Alans'/Alan's!



# Exam practice

Listening Part 2
You will hear an interview wit
For each question, put a tick

th Helen, who is a basketball player. (✓) in the correct box.

# A Context listening

Elliot is talking to his friend Kelly about the weekend. Look at the pictures. What are Elliot's plans? What are Kelly's plans?



H		Listen and check if you were right.
	Why	is Kelly annoyed with Elliot?

11	Listen	again	and	complete	the	sentences	below.
1	ALC: COL	-Burre	PATTER	Compicto	CARC	Deliterices	DCIOII.

- 1 What does Kelly say about tonight? 'We say the new James Bond film.'
- 2 What does Elliot say about tonight? 'I ...... for exams tonight.'
- 3 What does Kelly say about Saturday and Sunday? 'We ....... the weekend at the seaside.'
- 4 What are Elliot's plans for Saturday? 'I ...... a designer at 10.30 on Saturday.'
- 6 What does Elliot say about Sunday? 'I expect I ...... asleep all day on Sunday.'
- 7 What does Kelly agree to do? 'OK. I ...... a coffee with you.'
- 8 What does Elliot say about the future? 'I ...... really rich. I ...... a fast car and I ...... you all to the seaside ...'

# Look at your answers to A3 and find the sentences which contain:

- 1 present simple ...... 2 going to ...... 3 present continuous ...... 4 will future? .....
- 5 a timetable ...... 6 what someone believes about the future ......
- 7 plans someone has already made ....... 8 what someone decides at that moment? .......

# B Broncon

To talk about the future, we use will, going to, the present simple and the present continuous.

# B1 Will

I/you/he/she/it/we/they will ('ll) + verb
I/you/he/she/we/it/they will not (won't) + verb
Will I/you/he/she/it/we/they + verb?
Will you pay?

#### We use will

• to say what we know or believe about the future (often with maybe, I think, I expect and I hope):

I'll be 17 next week. (= he knows this)

Licrobady will do shappur, by any then I expect I'll be asleep all day.

• when the speaker decides something at the moment he/she speaks.

I'll have a cultice with time to she decides now.



# B2 Going to

am/is/are going to + verb

We're going to see the film.

I'm not going to see the film.

Are you going to see the film?

#### We use going to

- when we can see that something is certain to happen:
   The plane is going to land.
- to talk about plans:

  We're going to see the new James Bond film. (= we decided earlier)

⚠ We can often use going to or will to talk about the future:

I'm going to be 17 next week. = I'll be 17 next week.

We use will more often when we write, but going to when we speak.



### Present continuous

We use the present continuous (see Unit 4)

for plans already made when we know or guess the time:
 What are you doing tonight? (= what plans have you got?)
 I'm meeting a designer at 2.30. (= he has an appointment)

# **B4** Present simple

We use the present simple (see Unit 4) for timetables (trains, planes etc.) and for programmes (films, classes etc.):

My flight leaves Rome at 11 pm on Saturday and it arrives it. London at 1 arr The film starts at nine o'clock.



# C Grammar exercises

ioin

be

Complete each sentence with a verb from the box and the correct form of will.

be become come leave need phone

- 1 I think \_\_\_\_\_ Rob because I haven't heard from him for a long time.
- 2 I (not) ...... my bag here because it's got my camera in it.
- 3 My grandmother ...... 65 on her next birthday.
- 4 No thanks, I (not) ...... to the swimming pool with you because I've got a cold.
- 5 During the next hundred years the world ...... warmer and warmer.
- 6 How much money (you) ..... for the weekend?

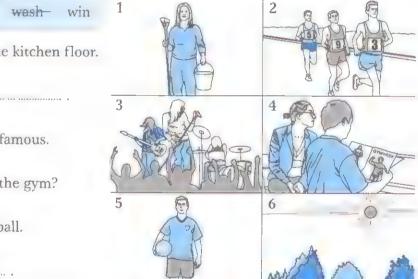


rain

- 2 Number 5 (not) ......
- 3 They ..... famous.

play

- 4 (you) ..... the gym?
- 5 I ..... football.
- 6 It (not) ......





Colin: Hello Darius. (1) ASTE SELS TO (we/go) to a music festival this summer.

Darius: Are you? That sounds good.

Colin: Do you want to come? (2) ..... (we/buy) tickets this afternoon.

Darius: (3) ......(I/think) about it.

Colin: (4) ...... (Paul and Ros/come) too. It's quite cheap.

Darius: (5) ...... (I/check) my diary. When is it?

Colin: 5-8 August.

Darius: OK, OK, (6) ...... (I/buy) a ticket.



loe:

Melissa wants to interview Liam O'Neill, a famous DJ. She is talking to Joe, his assistant. Look at the diaries and fill in the gaps using the present continuous.

Melissa: I can meet Liam any time on Monday. What

(1) \_\_\_\_is he doing \_\_\_\_ during the day?

We (2) ..... to new CDs all day. He

can't see you then.

Melissa: And what (3) ...... in the evening?

Joe: He (4) ..... to the Daily Post at 7.30.

Melissa: Oh. And where (5) ...... on Tuesday?

Joe: He (6) .... to the TV studio early and

he (7) ..... there all day.

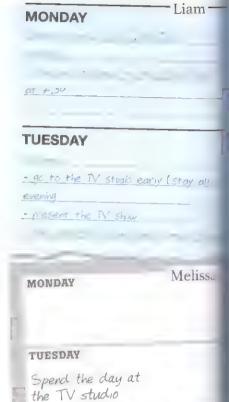
Melissa: Oh, that's great. I (8) ..... the day at

the TV studio.

Joe: But in the evening he's (9) ...... his

TV show. He can't see you before that. But the production team (10) ...... a meal together after that. Perhaps you can join them?

Melissa Really? That's great! Thank you so much.





Read this conversation between a hotel receptionist and a guest. Underline the best form of the verb.

Guest: Excuse me. I (1) 'm staying / stay here till Friday. I'm (2) going to look / I'm

looking around the city now but I want to do some walking in the

mountains while I'm here.

Receptionist: OK. There's a guided tour tomorrow. It (3) is leaving / leaves from outside

the hotel at 10 am and it (4) is returning / returns at 5 pm.

Guest: Oh good. I think I (5) 'm doing / 'll do that.

Receptionist: Would you like to order a packed lunch? Cheese or chicken sandwiches?

Guest: I (6) Il have / have cheese please. And are there any evening activities in the

hotel?

Receptionist: There's a concert tonight which (7) is starting / starts at 7.30.

Guest: Oh I (8) 'm meeting / 'll meet an old friend at 6 and I don't think I (9) 'm / 'l.

be back in time.

Receptionist: OK. (10) Are you going to have / Do you have dinner in the hotel tonight?

Guest: No thanks.

# D Exam practice

#### **Reading Part 1**

Look at the text in each question.

Ahat does it say?

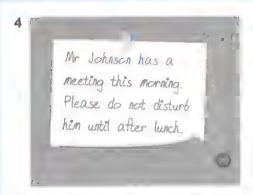
Mark the letter next to the correct explanation - A, B or C.

Sale starts Monday.
Shop opens normal time
but closes late every day
except Wednesday

- A The shop is open longer on Monday than on Wednesday.
- **B** The shop is open the same hours as usual during the sale.
- **C** The shop is open the same number of hours each day during the sale.

Lewis
Can you give me a lift home from the concert tonight? I'm working late so I expect I'll miss the beginning of it.
Don't wait for me outside.
Jack

- A Lewis will probably arrive at the concert after Jack.
- **B** Lewis will probably pick up Jack on his way to the concert.
- C Jack will probably meet Lewis inside the concert hall.
- Dear Mun
  we're staying in the
  mountains tomorrow night
  after we've spernt the
  day walking. Then, before
  we travel to the coast,
  we're going to spend two
  days in the city.
  Paula
- A Paula is travelling from the coast to the city.
- **B** Paula is walking in the mountains before she goes to the city.
- C Paula is staying on the coast before she travels to the mountains.



A You can talk to Mr Johnson at lunchtime if you want.

**B** Mr Johnson is going to arrange a meeting for this afternoon.

C You cannot talk to Mr Johnson until this afternoon.

Kezia

Jenny rang You left your mobile at her nouse She'll probably bring it here on her way to college

Alex

- A Kezia has to fetch her mobile from Jenny's house.
- **B** Jenny hopes to give Kezia her mobile before she goes to college.
- C Kezia should meet Jenny at college to get her mobile back.

#### Grammar locus tasil

Look at the exam questions	. Find some verbs	which have a future m	reaning.
----------------------------	-------------------	-----------------------	----------

- 1 Find two verbs which tell us about a timetable. Write them here.
- 2 Find two verbs which tell us about plans someone has already made. Write them here.
- 3 Find two verbs which tell us about what someone believes about the future. Write them here.

# Modals 1

# 13

general notes; asking someone to do something; suggestions and offers; permission

A	Context listening
11	Mr Kent, Maria and Alex work together. Where do you think they work? What are their jobs?
	You are going to hear three conversations. In which conversation:
	1 does Alex make suggestions or offer to do things?
	2 does Maria ask Alex to do things?
	3 does Alex ask for permission to do things?
1	Listen again and complete these sentences.
	1 I sit here for a minute?
	2 I get a drink of water?
	3 I use the phone?
	4 you do those tables over there?
	5 you help me put out today's menus?
	6 And you check the salt and pepper?
	7 Then you sweep the floor?
	8 But we move some tables outside?
	9 And weserve more interesting food perhaps.
	10 I make one of my special recipes if you like.
=	Look at the recording script on page 187 and check your answers.  Now put the expressions in the box under the correct heading.
	Can I Would you We could Will you Could I Shall we I can Can you Could you May I
	ing for permission Asking someone to do something Making offers or suggestions



# **B** Grammar

# Modal verbs: general notes

Modal verbs (e.g. can, could, may, might, must, shall, should, will, would) are special auxiliaries which add to the meaning of other verbs. (See also Units 14 and 15.) They follow these rules:

- \* Modal verbs never change (we don't add -s or -ed or -ing to them): He might help Another verb follows the modal verb, e.g.  $can + help \rightarrow I$  can help.
- ▲ We don't put to before the second verb: I can help not I and to help?
- not follows the modal verb: That will not (or won't) be necessary.
- ? The modal verb goes first: Could you sweep the floor?

⚠ Ought is like other modal verbs but we put to after it: I/You/He/We/They ought to help. (not They ought help.)



▲ need can be a modal verb and a normal verb. (See Unit 14B3.)

# Asking someone to do something

Less polite	More polite	Answer +	Answer -
Can Will   chelp me	Could Would help	1 ', ' (etc.)	, · · · · (etc.)

⚠ We never use May you? to ask someone to do something. (not May you help me?)



# Making suggestions and offers

To make a suggestion, we can say:

Shall I we move one tables raisile I can make a cot on the construction

If we are less sure of what we are suggesting, we say:

We could serve more interesting food perhaps.

We can also use these expressions:

Why don't I/we move some tables outside? Let's move some tables outside.

How about / What about moving some tables outside?

⚠ We say moving not move after How about / What about ...

When we offer to do something, we usually use shall:

Shall I put the advert back in the window? (not Will I put ...?)



### Asking for, giving and refusing permission

When we give permission or talk about having permission, we use can:

Less polite	More polite	Answer +	Answer -
Can I sit here!	Could/May I sit here?	Yes, of course, / Certainly. (etc.)	I'm afraid not, / Sorry. (etc.)

You can borrow my camera.

We can finish work early tomorrow.

When we refuse permission, we use *can't*:

You can't use the phone.



### Grammar exercises



Claire and Tim are planning a party. Make sentences using the modal verb in brackets.

senten	ces using the modal verb in brackets.
1 we	/ tidy the flat before the party. (must) We must fidy the rist period the nurty
2 Pet	er / help us. (ought)
3 we	/ decorate the flat. (will)
4 we	/ (not) invite too many people. (should)
5 you	/ bring your CDs? (can)
6 you	r mother / lend us some plates? (could)
7 we	(not) / make too much noise. (must)
8 the	neighbours / complain. (might)
passen Can yo He ask 1 car 2 hol 3 fast 4 ope 5 hel 6 clos	as broken his wrist and he is going on a coach journey. He asks the other gers to help him. What does he say? Use each of these expressions at least once:  """ """ """ """ """ """ """ """ "" ""
shall l	get I could do Shall I show What about having I can cook I could give
Jamie: Sam;	I'm sorry you've broken your wrist, Sam. (1) some shopping for you.  It's OK. I've got lots of food. I just can't cook at the moment.
Jamie:	Oh. Well, (2)something for you.
Sam:	That would be good. (3) a pizza and some salad?
Jamie:	Fine. And (4) you a drink? What would you like?
Sam:	Can you open that orange juice in the fridge? I can't do it with one hand.
Jamie:	OK. Look, I've brought some work from college. (5)you?
Sam:	Actually, I'm coming into college this afternoon.

Jamie: I'm going too. (6) ...... you a lift. I've got my motorbike outside.

- Michael said: '...... washing up.'

  7 The teacher gave the boy permission to use the computer. The teacher said: '..... the computer.'

  8 Katharine asked the shop assistant to find a bigger size. Katharine said: '..... a bigger size?'

  9 Ellie suggested buying a CD for Tom's birthday.
- Ellie said: '...... a CD for Tom's birthday?'

  10 Sanja asked for permission to put a poster on the wall.

  Sanja said: '...... a poster on the wall?'

#### D Exam Practice

# **Listening Part 1**

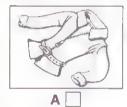


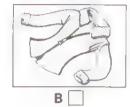
There are seven questions in this part.

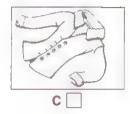
For each question there are three pictures and a short recording.

Choose the correct picture and put a tick (✓) in the box below it.

1 What does the woman order?

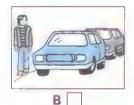


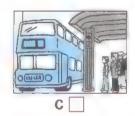




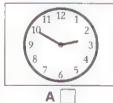
2 Where is the boy?

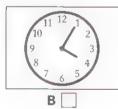


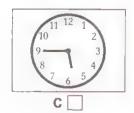




3 When will the man see Dr Browning?

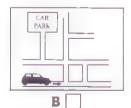


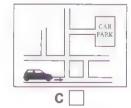




4 Where will the man park his car?













6 What does Jane want Maria to do?

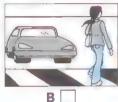


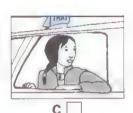




7 How will the woman travel to the city centre?







Grammar focus to

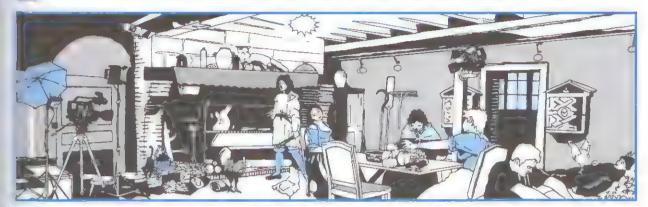
Here are some sentences from the conversations you heard. There is one mistake in each sentence. Underline it and write the correction.

- 1 Could I have a look on the computer for you? ...... (an offer)
- 2 Will I try on that skirt? ...... (asking for permission)
- 3 So may you come and pick me up? ..... (a request)
- 4 Why don't you calling a taxi? ...... (a suggestion)
- 5 Shall I change it please? ..... (asking for permission)
- 6 Excuse me, would I leave my car here? ...... (asking for permission)
- 7 What about go to see a film at the cinema? ....... (a suggestion)
- 8 Will we go to that new restaurant? ...... (a suggestion)
- 9 Shall you help me please? ..... (a request)
- 10 So may you do it? ..... (a request)
- 11 Would I book you a taxi? ...... (an offer)
- 12 Or you may take the underground. ..... (a suggestion)

Look at the recording script to check your answers.

# A Conjurt Housing

This is a scene from a television programme. What kind of programme is it?



- You are going to hear one of the girls in the picture telling her mother about the TV programme. Were you right?
- Listen again. Rosie talks about all the things below. Tick the correct columns in the table.

	We have to	We mustn't	We don't have to	We needn't				
look after the animals	1							
be good at acting								
use mobile phones								
take modern equipment								
wear a microphone								
take our own clothes								
cook the meals								
stay there								

Look at the recording script on page	188 and	check your	answers.	Underline	each
sentence as you find it.					

Example: We have to look after the animals and things like that.

# Obligation - mustn't and don't have to

Although must and have to have similar meanings (see B1), mustn't ≠ don't have to.

mustn't = don't do it (a rule):

We mustn't use mobile phones.

I mustn't use a diary.

We can also say It's not allowed:

We're not allowed to use mobile phones.

don't have to = it's not necessary:

We don't have to take our own clothes.



#### Necessity - need

need = it is necessary

Need is a normal verb:

I need to buy some bread. (not I need buy some bread.)

Do you need to take any food with you?

In the negative, need can be

• either a modal verb:

You needn't worry.

• or a normal verb:

You don't need to worry.

Needn't and don't need to = it isn't necessary = don't have to:

needn't worry You don't need to to Yadon't have to worry

In the past we say:

- They needed to look after the cornect of the corner was a given after the countries
- They didn't need to work hard. (= It wasn't necessary to work hard.)
- · Did they need to grow much one first was reason goes to be received





#### Orders and advice

We use must, should, ought to and could to give advice.

strong advice

less strong advice

La must check the details

tota should ought to tell military

Yacould the same the

In the negative, we use shouldn't or ought not to:

You shouldn't sign the letter.

You ought not to go there.

⚠ We don't use couldn't to give advice. (not You couldn't sign the letter.)

We use should and ought to when we are talking about the right thing to do:

I should learn to cook.

We ought to send her a postcard.

I shouldn't worry so much.

I ought not to eat that cake.

→C5, G\$

# C Grammar exercises

61		mplete these sentences using the correct form of must or have to. Think about the see of have to.
	1	I tar't nive (not) get up early yesterday because it was Saturday. (have to)
	2	You always tell the truth. (must)
	3	I buy a new computer next year. (have to)
	4	(we) wash up now? (have to)
	5	When he was in the school team, Simon train every Saturday. (have to)
	6	Children (not) go in the pool without an adult. (must)
		I
		How long (you) wait for the bus last night? (have to)
B-2	For	r each sentence, underline mustn't or don't have to.
	1	Tell John he mustn't / doesn't have to drive me to the station because Martha can.
	2	The students mustn't / don't have to eat in the library.
	3	He can stay at home. He doesn't have to / mustn't come with us.
		You mustn't / don't have to tell Chloe because it's a surprise.
	5	I mustn't / don't have to forget to phone Jan tonight - I promised her.
	6	You mustn't / don't have to bring any football boots because you can borrow mine.
	7	We mustn't / don't have to clean this room because it's not dirty.
	8	We mustn't / don't have to be late because we don't want to miss the beginning of the film.
Ca	Co	mplete these conversations with need to or needn't.
	1	'I'm going walking in the mountains.'
		You (1) real to
		'Yes you're right but at least I (2) carry my raincoat.'
	2	'Can I get ready for the party at your flat? I (1) have a shower after work.'
		'Of course and you (2) bring a hair-dryer because you can use mine.'
	3	'I'm going to town now.'
		'Why?' 'I (1) buy a birthday present.'
		'Have you got some cash?'
		'No, I (2) take cash because I've got my credit card.' 'What about the
		bus fare?"
		'I've got a bus pass so I (3) pay.'

	D 1.11	
		conversation between two friends about going camping. Fill in the gaps with ct form of <i>need</i> .
	Rena:	I'm going to that campsite by the beach next week. When you went,
		(1) did you need (you) to take a sleeping bag?
	Dominic:	Of course. It was very cold. And we (2) to take plenty of food too as there were no restaurants.
	Rena:	So (3) (you) to make a fire to cook your food on?
	Dominic:	No, because we took a small cooker with us. We had one small frying pan so we cooked everything in that . We (4) (not) to use any saucepans.
	Rena:	Maybe I could borrow that frying pan and cooker.
	Dominic:	Sure.
		a part-time job in a shop. Your friend is starting work at the shop next week. friend some advice. Use each expression in the box once.
		t You ought to You could <del>You should</del> aldn't You mustn't
	1 be pol	ite to the customers. You should be polite to the customers.
		o work extra hours
		at work on time
		dy
		ored
		e key to the safe
	Fill in the	gaps in this email with one of the words or phrases in the box.
	had T	l have <del>must-</del> should needn't didn't have shouldn't
0	9.9	
I ( jou new we (5)	irney wasn't ar the station ekend chation maths exam	tell you about my weekend with my friend Erica who lives in Leeds. The teasy because I (2) to change trains three times. But Erica lives on so I (3)

# D Exam practice

#### Grammar focus taski

Look at the Writing Part 3 task below. Make a list of things you have to do and things you mustn't do in your school.

We have to	We mustn't
arrive by 8.30	leave the school during the day

Now do the exam task below.

# **Writing Part 3**

This is part of a letter you receive from your English friend Claire.

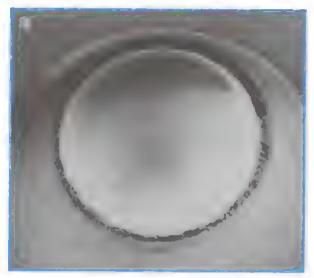
We have lots of rules in my school. We have to arrive by 8.30 and we mustn't leave the school during the day. What are the rules at your school? Do you agree with them?

- Now write a letter to Claire, telling her about the rules at your school.
- Write about 100 words.

# A Gentless Heterolog

Look at these photos of two ordinary objects. What are they?





- You are going to hear part of a quiz programme. Were you correct?
- Listen again and complete these sentences.

Photo A	Photo B
1 It be an insect.	5 It be a headlight.
2 It be a hairbrush.	6 It's the wrong shape. It be a needle.
3 It be a flower.	7 It be a pencil.
4 It be a book.	8 It be a pen because that looks like ink

- Look at the sentences in A3.
  - 1 In which sentences does the speaker feel sure?
  - 2 In which sentences does the speaker feel unsure?
  - Look at the recording script on page 189. Complete what the questioner says to the teams.
    - 1 Team A, ..... say what's in your photo?
    - 2 Team B, .... say what the object is?

Look at the words you've written. Do they mean the same?

# B F= mmes

# **Certainty and possibility**

When we're sure something is true, we use must:

It must be a pen because that looks like ink.

They must be at home because the light is on.

When we think something is possible, we use might/could/may:

It could be a butterfly because those are its wings.

He might be her brother but I'm not sure.

When we're sure something isn't true, we use can't:

It can't be a butterfly because it hasn't got a body (not It mustic be a butterfly.)

That can't be Sue's car because hers is at the garage.

⚠ We also use *might/could/may* when we are uncertain about the future:

I may go to Greece next month. (= it's possible but I'm not certain)

My football team might win the cup.



# Ability (I can ..., I'm able to ..., I could ...)

I can = I know how to do something or it is possible for me to do something. In the present we use can (a modal verb) or be able to (not a modal verb).

- + The children can swim but they can't dive yet.

  I can help you on Monday but not on Tuesday.
- I can't decide what it is.
- ? Can you say what's in your photo?

be able to is less common:

My grandfather is able to cook less our recass but he isn't able to walk to the shaps. I'm not able to answer that question.

In the past we use could or was able to:

He could / was able to walk when he was one.

The athletes couldn't/weren't able to train because the weather was bad.

For all other forms, we use be able to:

Future: Team A will be able to come back next week.

Present perfect: Team A hasn't been able to answer the question yet.

Infinitive: Team A hopes to be able to come back next week.

We also use can and could for permission, offers and requests. (See Unit 13 Modals 1.)

# Gamma mortines

- Underline the correct verbs.
  - Carlotta: I can't find my keys and I'm late. There (1) might/must be a lot of traffic in town so I need to hurry. They're not in my bag so they (2) must/can't be in the flat somewhere.
  - George: Have you looked in the kitchen?
  - Carlotta: They (3) can't/could be there because I haven't been in the kitchen. They

    (4) must/might be in the bedroom because I changed my clothes there or they

    (5) could/must be on the table in the hall. I'll go and look. No, they're not there.
  - George: Did you leave them in the car?
  - Carlotta: They (6) *could/can't* be in the car because I opened the door with them. They (7) *can't/must* be here somewhere.
  - George: I can't see them. Let's think. They (8) might/can't be in your coat pocket because you weren't wearing one but they (9) can't might be in your jeans pocket. Have you looked there?
  - Carlotta: Oh, thanks. I've found them. I (10) can/may be home a bit late tonight. Bye.
- Look at these photographs. Where are they? Write three sentences for each photograph beginning It might be ..., It could be ..., It can't be ..., It must be ... Use the places in the box.

Sweden Nepal Australia India Brazil South Africa







- It can the Aistralia
- I' munt no North
- m 10 6

.....

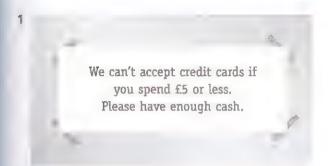
W	Vrite can, can't, could or couldn't in the spaces.
1	I'm sorry Icome to your party. I'm busy on Saturday.
2	2 You sing much better than that when you were younger.
3	Rachel's son count to 20 and he's only two!
4	We didn't speak the language so we understand what the woman said.
Ę	5 you read that notice from here? I haven't got my glasses with me.
(	6 I know that man but I remember his name.
7	Anne-Marie likes to sit close to the stage so she see the actors' faces clearly.
8	8 I'm afraid of going on a boat because I swim.
9	9 When I was a teenager I walked everywhere because I drive.
10	you write your name when you started school?
13	1 He looked everywhere for the ring but he find it.
12	2 you open this window? I've tried, but it's too heavy.
CI F	fill in the gaps with words from the box.
	are be is to be hasn't been haven't been isn't will weren't wasn't won't be -were-
	1 None of the students able to read the teacher's writing.
	2 Your sister speaks very good Spanish you able to speak any foreign
•	languages?
	3you be able to finish that homework by tomorrow?
	4 They able to see anything from the plane because it was cloudy.
	5 I'm sorry, I able to come to your wedding next month because I've got
	exams.
	6 He able to take a holiday since last summer.
	7 If you want to do the diving course, you have able to swim.
	8 I looked everywhere but I able to find the photograph because Laura
	had it.
	9 Rebecca able to lend you some money or do you want me to give you some?
1	0 Let's phone the theatre. We may able to get seats for tonight.
	1 I wanted to invite James but I

12 The manager ...... able to see you now. Can you come back tomorrow?

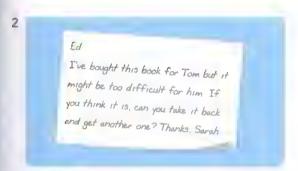
# D Exam practice

#### **Reading Part 1**

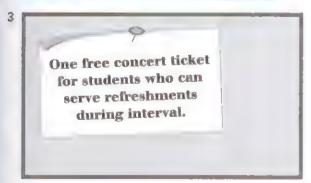
- Look at the text in each question.
- What does it say?
- Mark the letter next to the correct explanation A, B or C.



- A It is possible to pay bills of more than £5 by credit card.
- **B** We can give you cash if you pay your bill by credit card.
- **C** We will charge you extra if you pay bills of under £5 by credit card.



- A Sarah is happy to go and get a different book if Ed wants her to
- **B** Sarah is worried that the book isn't suitable for Tom.
- **C** Sarah wants Ed to give the book to Tom.



- A Refreshments are included in the price of concert tickets.
- **B** Students who help with the concert get free refreshments.
- **C** Students don't pay for concert tickets if they help with the refreshments.

To: Katie
From: Gemma
Can you look for my gloves? They might

Can you look for my gloves? They might be in your bedroom because I put my coat there. I've looked everywhere here so they must be in your flat.

- A Gemma is sure her gloves are in Katie's bedroom.
- **B** Gemma has searched everywhere for Katie's gloves.
- **C** Gemma thinks her gloves are in Katie's bedroom.

Simon, Trudi phoned she hasn't been able to contact Nick she knows he can't be on holiday because he's got an exam tomorrow! can you tell her if you know where he is?

- A Trudi thinks Nick is still on holiday.
- B Trudi wants Simon to phone Nick for her.
- C Trudi hopes Simon can help her find Nick.

#### Comme Manual No. 246

Rewrite these sentences using a modal verb - can, can't, must or might. It is not possible to change one of the sentences.

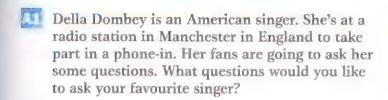
- 1 We are not able to accept credit cards if you spend £5 or less.
- 2 It is possible that the book is too difficult for Tom.
- 3 Are you able to take it back?
- 4 One free concert ticket for students who are able to serve refreshments.
- 5 Gemma thinks her gloves are in Katie's bedroom.
- 6 Gemma is sure her gloves are in Katie's flat.
- 7 She hasn't been able to contact Nick.
- 8 He definitely isn't on holiday.

# Questions and answers

7/6

yes/no; short answers; question words; agreeing with statements

# A Bouton's listant





Write three ideas here.

- Listen again and complete the questions below. Stop the recording when you need to.
  - 1 Dc you like Manchester?
  - 2 stay here?
  - 3 ..... in public for the first time?
  - 4 any clubs in Manchester?
  - 5 ...... your boyfriend now, Della?
  - 6 ......best?
- Look at the questions you completed in A3 and match them to these answers.

  - b ...... Yes, I do.
  - c ...... No, I haven't.
  - d ...... Dean Bradley.
  - e ...... Only four days.
  - f ...... At my high school concert.
- Look again at A3 and A4.
  - 1 Which of the questions in A3 begin with question words? .....
  - 2 Which of the questions in A3 do not begin with question words? ..........
  - 3 What is different about the answers to these two groups of questions? ......

# **B** Grammar

# **E1** Yes/No questions

When we make questions which can be answered with Yes or No

we put an auxiliary or modal verb before its subject:

(For modals, see Units 13, 14 and 15.)

We're (We are) going clubbing tonight You've (You have) been to that clubs → Are we zone clithby z tonight
 → Have you have a mat d, v

We must go to London.

→ Must we go to London?

• we use do(es) or did to make questions in the present simple or past simple. (See Units 4 and 5.)

You **like** Manchester. → **Do** you **like** Manchester?

Manchester has funtastic clubs Does Marien, see have nort sta crubs (not Does Manchester has fantastic clubs)

They went clubbing. → Did they go clubbing?

- we put the verb to be before its subject: She's (She is) in Manchester today.
- → Is she in Manchester today?

# **Short answers**

We answer a Yes/No question using the same auxiliary or modal verb as in the question.

If the answer is Yes:

Are you going to London? Yes, I am.

Do you like Manchester? Yes, I do.

Has he been clubbing? Yes, he has.

Could they ask questions? Yes, they could.

If the answer is No:

Are you going to London? No, I'm not.

Did you sing well? No, I didn't.

1

19

14

# Question words

Who What Where Why How Which How often How long
How far How many (+ countable noun) How much (+ uncountable noun)
What (+ noun) Which (+ noun) Whose (+ noun)

Wh... questions begin with the words in the box above.

We make most Wh... questions in the same way as Yes/No questions.

Della might marry **Dean**. → **Who** might Della marry? (Answer: Dean.)

I wrote a love song. 

What did you write?

(Answer: A love song.)

She can't sing because she's tired. 

Why can't she sing?

(Answer: Because she's tired.)

They'll leave at two o'clock. → What time will they leave? (Answer: At two o'clock.)

I've known Dean for three years. → How long have you known Dean? (Answer: (For) three years.)

I like this song. 

→ Which song do you like?

(Answer: This song or This one.)

I like Dean's music best. → Whose music do you like best?

(Answer: Dean's.)

She earned a million pounds. → How much money did she earn? (Answer: A million pounds.)

A Remember money is uncountable. (See Unit 8.)

A Remember the difference between these questions with like: What does Della like? (= What does Della enjoy?) She likes dancing.

What does Della look like? (= describe her) She's very tall.

What's (is) Della like ' ( ) (cl. me about her) Me's to and reveal



# Questions about the subject of the verb

When we make a question about the subject of the verb we do not change the word order. We don't use do in the present simple or did in the past simple.

Compare these questions about the subject and object of a sentence:

Matt enjoyed the concert.

What did Matt enjoy? (Answer: The concert.) not Who dat enjoyed Matt?
Which CDs cost £5? (Answer: These CDs.) not Which CDs do cost £5?

▲ In a subject question, who has a singular verb

Who is going to the concert' (not Who are going' although we know there must be more than one') unless there are two or more people in the question:

Who are your favourite singers?



# Agreeing with statements

We use So to agree with positive statements and Neither or Nor to agree with negative statements. We put the verb before the subject:

• with the verb to be:

I'm looking forward to that concert. So am I.
We're going to Leeds. So am I.

• with an auxiliary or modal verb:

She's been to Manchester.

I don't know this song.

He can't dance.

So have I.

Neither do I.

Nor can I.

• with the present or past simple, using do or did:

They enjoyed the concert.

He likes this song.

We didn't hear it.

So did we.
So do I.
Neither did I.



# C Grammar exercises

CI	Ch	ange the	ese sentences	into	Yes/No	questions
	1	I live in	Barcelona.			

Z AICX IS a Studelli	2	Alex	is	a	student.
----------------------	---	------	----	---	----------

3	Sam	and	Emma	are	getting	married.
9	Oum	CILLY	Tatter	LLL C	50000	111011110000

4	Bob	drove	to	Malaga.
-	2000	22010	-	

- 5 Joanne's got lots of CDs.
- 6 I can dive very well.
- 7 Eddy watches football every Saturday.
- 8 Adam's seen that film.
- 9 Marc had dropped his watch.
- 10 I was late for school yesterday.

# Do you live in Barcelona?

# Is Alex a student?

*	۰	•	۰	*	*	,	٠	•	+	•	-		•		•	٠	•	٠	"	١	*	١	١	۰	*	•	•	•		•	
		•	•									,	,					٠			,				,					?	

	************	?
--	--------------	---

•	•	•	4	•	•	٠	٠	•	•	•		•		٠		*	•	١	*	•	•			•	•			ï	
									-														,		-			?	

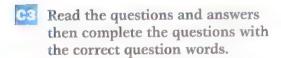
																													,	)	
٠	4			+							4		۰	Þ	۰	+	•		۰	٠		٠	•	٠	-		,	۰	١		

# ?



1	£	2	 3	 4	 5	*********	6	421////	7	247422172	8	 9	** ******	10	

a Yes he did. b No, I wasn't. c Yes, they are. d No, he doesn't. e Yes, he had. f Yes I do. g Yes, I can. h No, he isn't. i No, he hasn't. j Yes, she has.



I called at your house yesterday, but you weren't in.

- 1 Where were you?
- 2 ..... did you go there?
- 3 .....did you travel?
- 4 ...... car did you go in?
- 5 ..... did you go with?
- 6 ..... were you there?
- 7 .....shops did you go to?
- 8 ..... did you buy?
- 9 ..... did they cost?
- 10 ..... did you have for lunch?
- 11 ..... did you get home?





In Bristol.

Because I wanted to go shopping.

By car.

My father's.

My sister and her friend.

Five hours.

About twenty.

A new jacket and some boots.

£120.

I didn't have any. I'd spent all my money! Ten o'clock.



Read this magazine article and then write questions to match the answers below.



1 Who shocked his fans vesterday

Top fashion model Charles Decker I shocked his fans yesterday when he flew into London. He'd been on holiday in the Caribbean and he was wearing old shorts and a T-shirt. 'I was on the island of Grenada, but I had to come home suddenly because of a family emergency,' he explained. 'I

was on the beach. My secretary phoned from London. I jumped onto my motorbike and went straight to the local airport. It took twenty minutes to get there. I'm going to visit my brother now. He's in hospital. I'll change my clothes after I've seen him.'

1	who shocked his fans yesterday	.4452404	?	Charles Decker.
2		-,	.?	In the Caribbean.
3			?	Old jeans and a T-shirt.
4			?	Grenada.
5		*******	?	Because of a family emergency.
6			?	His secretary.
7			?	By motorbike.
8			?	Twenty minutes.
9			?	In hospital.
10			?	After he's seen him.
2 3 4 5 6 7	I like playing volleyball.  I don't go out very often. Nor do I or N I've got a CD player.  I'm going to meet my friends this weeken I was at school last week.  I didn't go out last night.  I'd like to learn to fly a plane.  I couldn't speak English when I was five.	id.	ST. 3	
Be	rite six questions to ask someone you adn egin five questions with the words given a in add answers too!	nire ind	(for add o	example an actor or sportsperson). one Yes/No question. If you like, you
1	Why?	4	Who	?
2	How often?	5	How	long?
3	Where?	6	P4+14PP1413	?

### D Exam practice

#### **Listening Part 4**

	201		-
_	-		
7	-		

Look at the six sentences for this part.

You will hear a conversation between a teenager, Amy, and her mother about a trip.

Decide if each sentence is correct or incorrect.

If it is correct, put a tick ( ) in the box under **A** for **YES**. If it is not correct, put a tick ( ) in the box under **B** for **NO**.

		A YES	B NO
	Amy's mother thinks that Amy should ask for her job back.		
1	Amy is glad she no longer has to work in the café.		
	At first, Amy's mother is confused about who Amy will travel with.		
	Amy last heard from Ricky on her birthday.		
	Ricky has travelled to Asia before.		
1	Amy and her mother agree she should meet Ricky before she goes		
	Grammar focus task		

Here are some questions and answers from the conversation. Can you remember the questions? Listen again if you need to.

- 1 'What plans .....?' 'We're going to travel.'
- 2 'How long .....?' 'At least six months.'
- 4 'Who ..... with you?' 'Ricky.'
- 5 '...... his mum ...... in the library?' 'No, Mum, not him.'
- 6 'But ......doing the same kinds of things?' 'Yes, we do.'

Now complete these sentences from the conversation.

- 7 'I haven't seen him since he was about 15.' 'No, neither ...... I.'
- 8 'I always liked him when he was little.' 'So ....... I.'
- 9 'I like sports and adventure and so ...... Ricky.'
- 10 'I think we ought to get together before we set off.' 'So ....... I.'

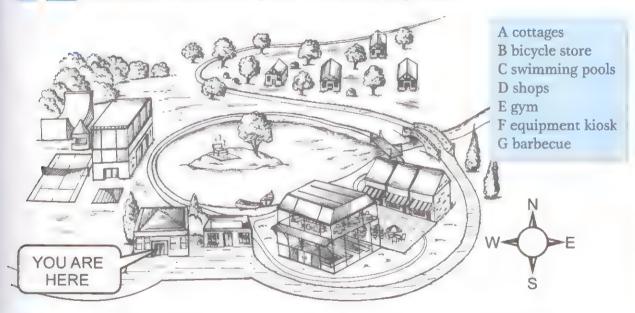
# Prepositions 1

# A Contest Masing





- Listen and check if you were right.
- Listen again and mark the places A-G on the map below.



- Read these sentences. Are they are true or false? Write T for True or F for False and correct the false sentences. Check your answers by looking at the map and listening again.
  - 1 The cottages are across the lake.
- 4 The gym is opposite the disco.
- 2 You can drive round the lake.
- 5 The barbecue is on the island.
- 3 The swimming pools are beside the restaurants.

# **B** Grammar

# In, at and on

We say in

- a continent, a country, a town, a park, a garden, a building, a room:
   You can cycle anywhere in the park.
   Uruguay is in South America.
- a cupboard, a box, a bag, a wallet, a book, a file: There's a lot of money in this bag.
   We found a picture of the castle in our guide book.
- a car or a taxi:
  They arrived in a taxi.

We say on

- an island, the coast:
  There is a barbecue on the island twice a week.
- a wall, the floor or the ceiling: I put the picture on the wall.
- a public transport vehicle (bus, train, plane etc.)

  I do my homework on the bus.

We use into, onto, off and out of for movement: We got onto/off the bus. He walked into/out of the shop.

We say at

- a place where we arrange to meet: I'll see you at the station.
- after arrive: When you arrive at your cottage you'll find details. but for countries and cities, we use in: When do we arrive in Athens?
- when we give directions:

  Go left at the traffic lights.
- a place where something happens (a cinema, a station, someone's home, school).
   Did you have a good time at Alex's house?
   I saw that film at the local cinema.
- an event (a party, a conference, a concert):
   My favourite hand played at the concert.
   There were lots of students at the conference.
- the top/bottom/side:

  Please sign this form at the bottom of the first page.



### Under and on top of: above/over and below/under

We use under and on top of for things which are touching:

The DVD player is under the telesistere

The magazine is on top of the fele isom

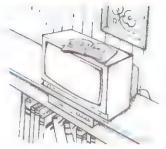
We use below or under and above or over for things which are not touching:

the books are below under the DVD placer

The purious above, over the recession.

Above and below are used in books:

Please do the exercise helow

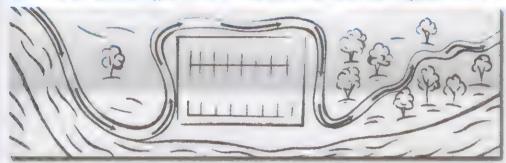






# Along, through and round; across and over

I followed the man along the rices, round the sameth and through the send



Across and over have similar meanings:

The copages are across over the lake, c. They in the other side of the lake from acre.





# In front of, behind, opposite, between; by, beside and next to



The noman is in front of the wherison

The relevision is behind the woman.

We say between two places, things or people:

Inc mother is between her sons

By, beside and next to mean the same:

The girl is by beside next to her father

Opposite means two things are on two facing sides.

The gul is opposite her mother | The gul is on the other side of the lable from her nother)

 $\triangle$  opposite  $\neq$  in front of



# C Grammar exercises

# Match the halves of the sentences.

- 1 The Prado is in ....h
- 2 Part of New York is on .....
- 3 Tunisia is in .....
- 4 Chile is on .....
- 5 Michelangelo painted on .....
- 6 This exercise is at .....
- 7 John Lennon was at .....
- 8 Trains from Cardiff arrive at .....
- 9 Cairo is on .....
- 10 The British Crown jewels are in .....

- a the coast of the Pacific Ocean.
- b North Africa.
- c the top of the page.
- d art college before he was famous.
- e the river Nile.
- f the Tower of London.
- g the island of Manhattan.
- h Madrid.
- i Paddington Station in London.
- j the ceiling of the Sistine Chapel.

# Complete each sentence with a preposition from the box.

# above at at below in in into off on top of onto

- 1 What time will Ali arrive \_\_\_\_at the restaurant?
- 2 There are lots of examples \_\_\_\_\_ a good dictionary.
- 3 I climbed ...... a wall to see what was happening.
- 4 From the top of the hill, we had a good view of the village ...... us.
- 5 There are lots of shoe shops ..... the city centre.
- 6 I saw Terry get ...... a taxi, but I don't know where it took him.
- 7 You can leave your bike ..... the side of the house.
- 8 I couldn't find my book because someone had put the newspaper .....it.
- 9 We keep medicines in the cupboard ..... the basin so the children can't reach them.
- 10 Harry got ...... the bus at the wrong stop because he was dreaming about his girlfriend.

# Underline the correct preposition in each sentence.

- 1 We can walk to the shops more quickly if we go along/across the sports field.
- 2 I was really annoyed when I found our cat asleep on top of/above my clean jumper.
- 3 We drove round/along the market square several times but we didn't see Simon.
- 4 There's a small shelf for your books on top of/over the bed.

- 6 Nicky found her mobile under/below a cushion on the sofa.
- 7 To get to the lifts, walk over/through the perfume department.
- 8 Please write your name clearly on top of/above your signature.
- 9 You can see through/across the harbour from our balcony.
- 10 The ball flew over/along the goal and landed in the crowd.

Look at the picture and fill in the gaps in these	sentences wi	ith
The bed is 1bctucco the door and the window.	AND COM	4.4

There are four pictures 2 ...... the wall 3 ...... the bed. There are some clothes hanging 4 ...... the head of the bed. In the corner is a table with a mirror 5 ...... it and a jug and other things 6 ...... it.

There's a chair 7 ..... the head of the bed and another chair 8 ..... the foot of the bed 9 ...... a door. There's a towel hanging 10 ...... this door.



prepositions.

- Write a description of the room you are in or another room you know well. Use the language in C4 to help you.
- In each of these sentences there is one wrong preposition. Underline each mistake and write the correction.
  - 1 There are lots of art galleries at Amsterdam. .......
  - 2 She watched the children run onto the park to play. .....
  - 3 Timmy saw Mel in the party but he didn't speak to her .....
  - 4 Andy ran through the beach to the next village and came back by bus. .....
  - 5 I took the ticket out from my bag and gave it to the man by the door.
  - 6 Please don't park behind my window I can't see anything. .....
  - 7 We were very tired when we arrived at Paris after a long flight, ......
  - 8 Jacky hid between a car when she saw Lewis because she didn't want to speak to him. .....
  - 9 I called in Rebecca's house, but she wasn't at home. .....
  - 10 The guide held a smail flag on top of her head so that the tour sts could follow her easily .....

## D Exam practice

Read the letter in the Writing Part 3 task below. Write down the names of the important buildings in your town. Use these ideas if you want.

town hall sports centre railway station museum art gallery hospital

#### Granner facility

Write some sentences describing where the buildings are. Use these prepositions.

opposite in front of behind between by beside next to

Now do the exam task below.

## **Writing Part 3**

This is part of a letter you receive from your English friend George.

I'm looking forward to visiting your town. Can you describe the town centre to me? Where are the most important buildings?

- Now write a letter to George, telling him about the buildings in the town centre.
- Write your letter in about 100 words.

## A Context Headle

Dea and Simon are talking about sport on the radio. Before you listen, look at the photographs and write the names of the sports. Which sports do you think they will talk about?















- Listen and check if you were right. As you listen, put the sports in the order in which you hear about them.
- Listen again and fill in the gaps below. If there is no word in the gap, mark .
  - 1 ... ten days there's one of my favourite events.
  - 2 I run every day ..... one or two hours.
  - 3 ..... next month there's the Cup Final.
  - 4 That's ..... the 18th, right?
  - 5 ... the European Champions' final, which is ..... the end of the month.
  - 6 ... don't forget the British Grand Prix ...... July.
  - 7 ... fans will arrive ...... sunrise and queue ...... hours.
  - 8 ... it's worth waiting ..... five o'clock.
  - 9 I did that ..... my birthday.
  - 10 ... if it rains ...... a match ...
  - 11 ... that's sport ..... the summer.
  - 12 We haven't got any more time ..... the moment.
- Look at your answers to A3 and write the words which follow:
  - 1 in 10 to-
- 5 for .....
- 2 at .....
- 6 until
- 3 on .....
- 7 -
- 4 during

## B GIN NUV

## B1 At, on and in

We use at with

• a point of time, seasonal holidays:

at the beginning end of the month at six act of at surese at the time, at their mess.

We also use at in some expressions:

at the archerd at first to at the negmn no, at as some! at possion at a nonempression

We use on with

• dates, days of the week, special days:
on 8th July (note that we say on the exclubed July), on Naciday on the day of
the race

We use in with

• parts of the day, months, seasons, years, decades, centuries:

in the difference morning evening but at vigo v in hill in the second in the twenty-first century

We do not use a preposition before today, tomorrow, yesterday, this/next/last:

-CI

A Be careful with these expressions.

in the end = at the end

in the end = the final result but at the end = the last event:

I looked everywhere for my shoe. In the end I found it under my bed.

The film was very exciting with a long car chase at the end.

on time ≠ in time

on time = at the correct time but in time = early enough:

If the train's on time, I'll be home at six.

If we leave now, we'll be home in time to see the news.

## B2 By and until/till

We use by to show something happens before or at a time:

Can you became a by tour and With year be clean person by at the case by

We use until/till to show something happens up to, but not after, a time:

Don't walt until till for in get year reliefs (= Bity vo., Trek as before July). Her played until till i. 2n mark ( - They stopped when a gar derk).



## In, during and for

In and during often mean the same when we talk about a period of time:

There will be some good sport in/during the next few months.

But when we talk about an activity or an event we use during not in:

It restred during the match (# the players were players, temms when the rain started)

For tells us how long: I run every day for one or two hours.

In tells us how soon: In and as d as me a n -parameter m



## C Grammar exercises



last the moment Monday 14th June the 1950s New Year the evening the end of this lesson the nineteenth century their wedding anniversary

1	I'll meet you on
2	Did you visit your cousins at?
3	The exam took place on
4	Ian looked everywhere for his camera and at he found it in his bag
5	Women first came to this university in
6	We took my parents to a restaurant on
7	Where is Michael living at?
8	My grandparents went to Australia in
9	We don't often go shopping in because we're too tired.
10	Let's go to the café at

Fill in the gaps in this note with at, on, in, by, until or mark - if no word is necessary.

Hi Tahitha I hope you're all ready for our trip to Glasgow. Remember to bring a jacket because Scotland can be very rainy, even 1 ...... Summer and it may be cold 2 ...... night. But I'm sure we'll have a good time. My brother was there 3 ...... 2004. I spoke to him 4 ...... last week and he says it's a great place. Our plane arrives there 5 ...... lunchtime so we'll have plenty of time to find somewhere to stay. Then we can go out 6 ..... the evening and go to some art galleries 7 ...... Friday. I've booked tickets for a guided tour 8 ...... the weekend. But we'll have time for shopping, don't worry. You can phone me 9 ..... tomorrow if you want to ask me anything, I'll be at home 10 ...... about two, but I have to go out after that. That's it, really. I'll meet you at the airport 11 ...... quarter past eleven 15 ..... time! Love Francine

Underline the correct prepositions in this magazine article.

# New Year

The singer Petunia is getting married again! She told our reporter the news:

Romance

I've known Carlo 1 *in/for* six months. He's a wonderful person and I'm so happy. I met him

For

2 during/at my European tour last autumn. He asked me to marry him and of course I said 'yes' immediately. But we didn't want to make an announcement 3 for/until we'd told our families. We're having a house built near Milan. The architect promises it'll be ready 4 by/till the summer so we can move in straight away. I'm so excited. 5 On/In three weeks I'll be Mrs Bianchi! And I'm going to be Mrs Bianchi 6 in/for the rest of my life. Isn't that wonderful?

Chuck is planning to visit his English cousin, Rick. Fill in the gaps in this online chat with a preposition.

Hi Rick. A few questions, if you have time?
I'll be in classes 1 weekdays. Will I have time for shopping?
Of course! You can go sho pping 2
What about getting home if I stay out late 6 the evening?  Do buses run 7 the night in your town?
There are some buses 8
I don't really want to cycle in England 10 winter. Perhaps I could hire a car.
Second work for the proof 12
That's great. Thanks for the help. See you.  Bye.
<b>▼</b>

## D Exam practice

#### **Reading Part 4**

Read the text and questions below.
For each question, mark the correct letter **A**, **B**, **C** or **D** 

#### **Portmeirion**

Last week I visited the village of Portmeirion in north Wales. During my childhood, I'd enjoyed holidays in the area, which is one of the most beautiful parts of Britain. However, I'd never been to the village and I had always wanted to. I visited the village in the autumn, which was a good choice as it was less crowded than in the summer. I'd read about its history and knew that the buildings were from many different styles and periods but hadn't realised how colourful they would be.

Portmeirion didn't exist in the nineteenth century. The first building didn't go up until 1926 and the last in 1976. It was built by Sir Clough Williams. From the age of 5, he dreamed of building his own village. He wanted to show that it was possible to build a village in a lovely area and not spoil it. In 1919 he sailed around the British coast for several months looking for a suitable spot. He visited 22 possible sites before he found the place of his dreams at last, just 8 km away from his family home.

Sir Clough had to build cheaply and quickly and I discovered that some of the buildings even have painted windows which were cheaper than putting in real windows! Some were built so that they look grander than they are. The windows in the bell tower, for example, are smaller as you go up the tower, so it seems taller from the ground than it really is.

On my second day there I stood on the balcony of my hotel at dawn. As I looked over the Austrianstyle houses and Italian piazzas with the wonderful view of the Welsh coastline in the background, I realised what Clough Williams was trying to do.

- 1 What is the writer trying to do?
  - A give information about where to stay in Portmeirion
  - B compare Portmeirion to other similar villages
  - C describe a visit to Portmerrion
  - D suggest what improvements could be made to Portmeirion
- 2 What surprised the writer about the village?
  - A the mixture of buildings
  - B the beauty of the area
  - C the number of visitors
  - D the different colours used

- 3 What was the aim of Clough Williams in 1919?
  - A to build a village without damaging the natural surroundings
  - B to make an existing village more beautiful
  - C to build a village as close to his home as possible
  - D to visit as many villages as possible before building his own
- 4 What did the writer find out about some of the buildings?
  - A They cost more to build than expected.
  - B They aren't as big as they look.
  - C There was a mistake in their design.
  - D Some of the windows need replacing.
- 5 Which of these postcards did the writer send from Portmeirion?
  - A It's my first v'sit to the area, and I hadn't realised how lovely this coast is.

    We should have a holiday together in Portmeirion.

I d'scovered Portme r on by chance. I've really enjoyed finding out about its history and looking at the unusual buildings.

I hadn't been to Portmeirion before but I'm pleased I came. I now realise what a special place it is,



Portmerrion v l age 15
getting bigger all the time.
I don't think they should
add any more new buildings.

(file

#### Grammar focus task

Put the correct prepositions in the spaces. Use the exam task to help you. There are similar expressions in it.

Last week I visited the city of York. I'd enjoyed holidays there

- (1) ......duting ..... my childhood and I'd always wanted to go back. This year
- I went there again (2) ...... last. When I was a child we went (3)
- ..... the summer but this time I visited (4) ..... the
- autumn. I was there (5) ...... five days. The first place I went to was the Cathedral or Minster. There was a church there
- (6) .....the fourth century but the present building was started
- (7) ...... 1220 and wasn't completed until 1472.

## Prepositions 3

expressions with prepositions; verbs and adjectives + prepositions; phrasal verbs

## Context Intering

Look at the picture of Katie, Emma and Olivia. What can you guess about them?



Emma

Olivia

Katie

You are going to hear Katie talking to her teacher, Mr Orwell. Why is she worried?

Listen again and complete the sentences below.

- 2 Well I approve ..... that plan.
- 3 You're interested ...... studying different subjects.
- 4 They're both so good ..... their subjects.
- 5 You think your sisters may succeed ...... getting places at university.
- 6 You may find that they're also worried ..... getting places at university.
- 7 They're really excited ...... going away to study.
- 8 I'm looking forward to congratulating you all ..... your exam results.
- 9 Thank you ...... listening to me.

Look at your answers to A3 and answer these questions.

- 1 What kind of word have you written in the gaps?
- 2 What kind of word follows the gaps in 1, 3, 5, 6, 7 and 9?
- 3 What kind of word follows the gaps in 2, 4 and 8?

Match the words in the box with the sentences 1-3. Underline the words in the sentence which mean the same as the words in the box.

fill in get on well look through

- 1 I'll check it with you.
- 2 They've already started to complete the forms.
- 3 You usually have a good relationship with your sisters.

## E Chimmonian

## **Expressions** with prepositions

We go somewhere:

by air land sea road, by plane car bus red train like on; or on holder, on lessuess

We can be:

at work, at home, at school, at wine say at bouch in love in large, in hed in a hier, on the phone. We do things:

by chance by accident by mistake in sever, in provide in probee on propose

Things can be:

in stock, for/on sale, for hire, on fire.



## **S2** Verb + preposition

We use prepositions after some verbs:

verb	preposition	
They apologised	for	starting without me.
She doesn't approve	of	that
They insist	on	applying for the same university.
Your sisters may succeed	in	getting places at university.

△ Don't forget that a noun, pronoun or the -ing form follows a preposition.

## Verb + object + preposition

We use prepositions after the object of some verbs:

verb	object	preposition	
He congratulated	me	on	my success.
Thank	you	for	listening to me.
You can forgive	them	for	doing that.
We will prevent	the students	from	leaving

Some verbs are followed by different prepositions with different meanings:

I asked my reacher about the new books (I wanted intermation) = I asked my reacher for the new books. (I wanted her to give me the books)

⚠ When we ask someone to do something, we say:

I asked my wacher to give me the books (not I wheet my teacher for giving me the norther)

⚠ Don't forget that a noun, pronoun or the -ing form follows a preposition.



We

We

A I

Phr wor The

The He of Loo

Son othe

Her fill t

get o

give give go o

go v han holo

## to be + adjective + preposition

We use prepositions after some adjectives when they follow the verb to be:

to be	adjective	preposition	
He was	good	at	football.
We were	angry	with	our friends.
She will be	angry	about	losing the match.
Were they	happy/excited/worried etc.	about	their exam results?
I was	pleased	with	the present.
We mustn't be	unkind	to	our cousins.
Don't be	rude	to	anyone at the party
Please <b>be</b>	polite	to	my parents.
Are you	interested	in	football?

A Don't forget that a noun, pronoun or the -ing form follows a preposition.



## **B5** Phrasal verbs

Phrasal verbs are two-word or three-word verbs. They have a main verb + one or two short words (preposition or adverb) which are really part of the verb.

The meaning of some phrasal verbs is clear:

Please put down your pencils. (= put + down)

The meaning of some phrasal verbs is not so clear. You have to learn what they mean:

He looks after his little begins ( "He takes care of his little beather)

Look out! There's a car coming. (= Be careful!)

They looked up the word in the diet, onary (- They to and the word in the decientity)

Can looking forward to neering them, in I believe I will enjoy meeting them;

Some phrasal verbs have several meanings. We understand which meaning by looking at the other words in the sentence:

She put on her clothes. (= She got dressed.)

She put on weight. (= Her weight increased.)

She put on the television. (= She switched the television on.)

Here are some more phrasal verbs which are useful for PET:

fill in = complete a form

find out = discover

get into = enter

get out of = leave

C; on with - have a 2 rod relationship with some me

rup = ger out of hed

and back = return something to someone

give up = stop doing something e.g. smoking

go on = continue

go with = match e.g. a coat and boots

nsup end a telephone call

old up = delay

join in = take part in

leave out = not do something

look for = try to find something

put off = do something later

pur through = connect a telephone call

ra acce tonish something experiol

serom ser au begin a journey

take away = remove

take off = remove clothes

turn into = become

tion lown = refuse an invitation offer

mon in antille

# C Grammar exercises

-	
C1	Fill in each gap with one preposition.
	1 I didn't buy any new boots because the shop didn't have my sizestock.
	2 Most of our guests arrived car but my brother came foot.
	3 You shouldn't be work with that awful cough, you should be
	home, bed.
	4 I deleted your email mistake, I didn't do it purpose.
	5 I usually travel train when I go to Scotland business.
	6 The movie star met her lover secret because they didn't want to be seen together public.
	7 Every time I try to see the manager he's either lunch or the phone.
	8 They met chance on a train and they've been love ever since.
	9 If you're not a hurry, we could go to the city centre bike.
C2	Complete the sentence describing what happened in each picture. Use the verb in brackets.
	1 She congratulated Eric on winning the cup (win)  Well done Eric)  Children can't come in.
	2 He prevented
	3 She insisted
	4 He thanked
	5 Sue apologised (break) 3
	6 He forgave (break)  Oh, I'm sorry.  (matter Sue)
	7 They succeeded (pass)
	8 She asked

112

C

La

Pa

in ce

a o

tu to.

sta bu pla

23	Match the sentence halves.	
	1 The taxi driver was angry	a in football.
	2 My brother is very good	b with the present.
	3 Peter was worried	c to my neighbour.
	4 David was pleased	d about losing his job.
	5 The postman was rude	e with the cyclist.
	6 We're not interested	f at doing word puzzles.
	In each of these sentences there is one wrowite the correction.	ong preposition. <u>Underline</u> each mistake and
	1 We saw that the house was in fire, but luckily r	no one was in dangeron
	2 The nurses have been very kind to you, you must	
	3 There are boats at hire here, or we can go fo	
	4 Are you in this country for holiday or are you	
	5 My parents don't approve on some of my frien	
	6 Did the manager insist in changing your day of	ž <u></u>
	7 My mother's in work at the moment, but she ca	n phone you this evening
22	There are eight phrasal verbs in this story. verb in the box that has the same meaning	
	delayed became entered entered started	refused

Last night I had dinner with some friends and set off around eleven o'clock to walk home. Passing an office block, I saw a moving light through a window so I phoned the police station. I was put through to a detective and told him what I'd seen. He promised to come immediately, but he was held up for three-quarters of an hour by a traffic jam. All the city centre roads were blocked by an accident. While I was waiting for him, a man turned up in a car. He asked me why I was there. I explained I'd seen a light, and he told me he was a policeman on his way home. We went to the back of the building and found a broken window. The man got into the building through the window. I said I could help him but he turned down my offer, so I waited for the detective. At last he arrived with a colleague and I told him about the man in the car. He made a note of the number and phoned the police station. Some more police came. One took away the car and the others watched the building. When the man and his friend tried to leave, the detectives arrested them. I'd planned a quiet walk, but it turned into an adventure!

D	- vam	practice
	-Activity	piacuco

#### Grammar focus task

Look at the Writing Part 2 task below.

- 1 Which prepositions follow congratulate someone? thank someone? apologise?
- 2 What word do we use when we apologise to a friend?

Now do the exam task below. Make sure you use the correct prepositions.

#### **Writing Part 2**

An English friend of yours has passed an important exam and has invited you to a party but you can't go.

Write a note to your friend. In your note, you should

- congratulate him or her
- thank him or her
- apologise.

Write 35-45 words.

## Contest listanies

Look at this list of things people use computers for. Do you use a computer for any of these things? Do you know other people who do?

booking accommodation buying tickets doing homework downloading music finding out information having online conversations paving bills planning holidays playing games writing emails

- You are going to hear Mickey and Cristina having a conversation.
  - 1 What doesn't Cristina enjoy?
  - 2 What has Mickey used the computer for this afternoon?
- Listen again and match the questions to the answers below. Stop the recording if you need to.

  - 2 How long has Mickey been on the internet? .....
  - 3 When do Mickey and Cristina need to get plenty of information? ......
  - 4 When did Mickey find the website about Doubtful Sound? ......
  - 5 What did Mickey promise Cristina? .....
  - 6 What is one of the main attractions of the trip? .....
  - 7 What is a possibility on the trip? .....
  - 8 When should people tell the company if they are vegetarians? .....
  - 9 When does Cristina need a good coffee? .....
  - A While looking for ideas about South Island.
  - B To go walking with her on holiday.
  - C After working in that office all day.
  - D No talking except on business.
  - E Before planning their holiday.
  - F Since finishing his essay. H Seeing penguins.
  - G Taking photographs.
- I When booking.



What kind of word follows since, before, while, when and after?





## Br te-minute

## The -ing form as subject

We often use the -ing form as the subject of a verb:

Running is good exercise.

We can use a noun with the -ing form:

Running a marathon is good exercise.

You often see -ing and No + -ing in signs and notices:

Parking is not allowed.

No talking except on business.



## Before, after, when, while and since + -ing

Before or after + -ing shows what happens first and what happens second:

We llook at the rebote before booking or mit = 1 We hack at the website? We'll book out tup). We booked out to uniter looking at the median to a select out to proceed an tup).

When + -ing shows that two actions happen at the same time:

I dropped my passport when getting entries one. - I profit the train and I displace to a passport at the same time.)

While + -ing shows that one action happens in the middle of another:

I found this website while looking to the source South Island for some time. I found the website during that time.)

Since + -ing shows when an action began:

I haven't had a pleasant day since joining that company.

some time ago now

|
I joined the company I haven't had a pleasant day

We can also use before, after, when, while and since at the beginning of a sentence:

Since finishing my essay, I've been on the internet.

A The subject of the -ing form must be the same as the verb in the other part of the sentence:

Before leave is the room. I transed the computer of: (= I turned the computer off,

I left the room.)



## By, without and for + -ing

We use by/without/for + -ing to show how we do something, or how something happens.

We can book by filling in this form online.

We can do it without leaving the house.

I use my computer for downloading music.

## B4 go and come + -ing

We use go + -ing to talk about some sports and other activities:

Can we go walking there?

When we invite someone to join us, we use come + the -ing form:

Would you like to come swimming with me?



## C Grammar exercises



Complete the notices so that they mean the same as these sentences. Use the -ing form and any other words you need.

1 Only employees can park here.

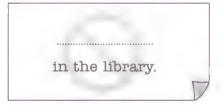
No parking

#### EXCEPT FOR EMPLOYEES.

2 You aren't allowed to smoke.



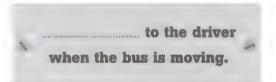
3 You are forbidden to eat or drink in the library.



4 You must not cycle on this path.



5 Do not talk to the driver when the bus is moving.



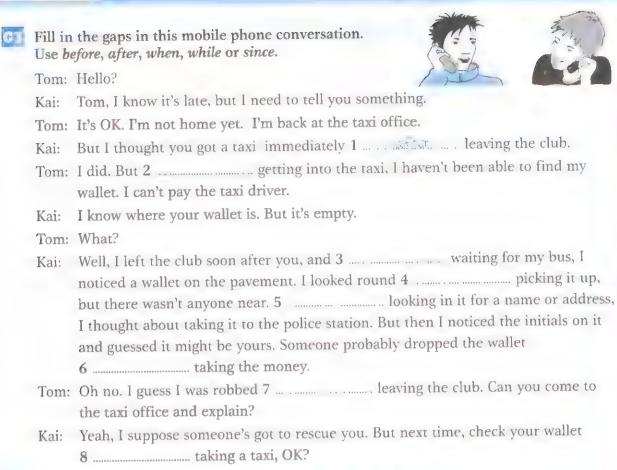
6 Do not play games on school computers.

ON SCHOOL COMPUTERS IS FORBIDDEN.



Make each pair of sentences into one sentence, using the word given + -ing.

- 2 Check the address. Post the parcel. (before)
- 3 Read the instructions. Connect the mouse to the keyboard. (before)
- 4 Ask the price. Book seats for the concert. (when)
- 5 Pass your exam. Take a holiday. (after)



WH

Ma

1

Complete this email with words or phrases from the box.

after eating before going being by emailing for texting shopping since starting studying swimming without dieting

(1)
Dear Parissa
How are you? I'm fine now the school holiday has started.
1 at home is great because 2 is horrible when the weather is hot.
Could we meet some time soon? We can go 3 and have lunch together.
And then, 4 we can see a film or something. Perhaps you'd like to come
5 with me at the new pool. I go there almost every day.
6 to that pool, I didn't really like swimming, but it's really great, with slides
and waves and so on. And the really good news is that I've lost two kilos 7
to swim regularly. And I've done it 8!
Let me know which day is best for you 9 me. Or you can text me. I've got a
new mobile and I can use it 10
I look forward to getting your email. Love Abby

## 1 Saum producer

#### **Reading Part 1**

Look at the text in each question.

What does it say?

Mark the letter next to the correct explanation - A, B or C.

Dear Grant
I'm resting in Glasgow this weekend
after spending the week cimbing in
the Scottish mountains! Then, before
flying back to Canada, I'm going
to spend two weeks in England
Elaine

- A Elaine is flying from Canada to England.
- **B** Elaine is resting before going to England.
- C Elaine is staying in Glasgow after leaving England.

Students can only see
the nurse if they have
an appointment.
Ring 3600 before 10am.

- **A** It is not possible for students to see the nurse without making an appointment.
- **B** Students can get an appointment with the nurse by arriving before 10 am.
- **C** Students can see the nurse up to 10 am without having to make an appointment.

Taking photographs is forbidden except in the new gallery where you must request permission.

- A You are not allowed to take photographs of the new gallery.
- **B** You are allowed to use a camera in the new gallery if you ask.
- **C** You are allowed to use a camera anywhere except the new gallery.



- A The door to this building should be kept closed until the evening.
- **B** The door to this building should be left open during the day.
- C Don't leave the building in the evening without checking that the door is closed.

Sonia
Since joining the health club I swim every day. Would you like to come swimming with me next Friday when I can take a guest free of charge?
Andrew

#### Andrew wants Sonia to

- A join the health club so they can swim together.
- B swim with him on a particular day.
- C bring a friend to swim at the health club

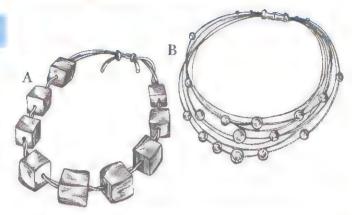
#### Grammar focus faski

Look at the exam task. Find an example of:

- 1 -ing as subject
- 2 go or come + -ing .....
- 3 when + -ing .....
- 4 without + ing .....
- 5 since + -ing .....

## A Context listening

- Look at these pictures of necklaces.
  - 1 Which necklace is made of wire and beads?
  - 2 Which is made of leather and stones?



- You are going to hear a man, Jeff, talking to two students, Garth and Mary, about making jewellery.
  - 1 What is Mary's reason for making jewellery?
  - 2 What is Garth's reason for making jewellery?.....
  - 3 Which necklace in A1 does Mary make?
  - 4 Which necklace in A1 does Garth make?
- Listen again and fill in the gaps below.
  - 1 ... think about what you intend ...... to do ..... with it.
  - 2 I don't mind ...... something which isn't completely perfect.
  - 3 I suggest ..... with simple things.
  - 4 I hate ...... heavy jewellery.
  - 5 ... remember ..... the weight.
  - 6 I remember ...... some earrings for a customer.
  - 7 She made .....lots of heavy stones.
  - 8 I'll let .....
  - 9 Well, I plan ..... this one myself.
  - 10 I'd like ..... these square black ones.
- Look at your answers to A3 and answer these questions.
  - 1 Which verbs are followed by the to infinitive?
  - 2 Which verbs are followed by an -ing form?
  - 3 Which verb is in both lists?
  - 4 Which verbs are not in either list?

#### B Grammar

We often use one verb followed by another. The first verb decides the form of the second verb:

first verb second verb

want to make a necklace.

hate wearing heavy jewellery.

second verb form

to infinitive

-ing form

The second verb is usually either the to infinitive or the -ing form.

## Verbs + to infinitive

Some verbs are followed by the to infinitive:

decide demand choose arrange (can't) afford agree aim appear offer plan prepare pretend manage hope learn deserve expect fail seem (can't) wait wish promise refuse

I can't afford to buy a lot of materials. Do you hope to sell it?

For the negative we put not before to: They agreed not to leave.

Some verbs are followed by the to infinitive and always have an object:

advise encourage force invite order persuade remind teach tell warn

I'm going to teach you to make necklaces.

I advise students to make several things.

Some verbs are followed by the to infinitive and sometimes have an object

ask expect help intend want would like would love would hate would prefer

We expect to be larger we will probably upon to a like expect the to be late of like will probably be late)

We would like to stay longer. or We would like them to stay longer.

A Remember the difference between would like and like:

Would you like to play tennis? (= an invitation to play)

Do you like playing tennis? (= ask, ig amout yeur sp.m.sp.) (see B5)

Make

!" le

84

Some

ima reco

Avoid

For the Can y

These

**B**5

He co

Some

forge

\*vmen

Verb

\* nget .

To to

×1

## make and let

Make and let are followed by the infinitive without to. They always have an object: I'll let you decide.

She made me use lots of heavy stones.

-02

## B4 Verbs + -ing

Some verbs are followed by -ing:

avoid carry on\* consider delay dislike eniov feel like\* finish give up\* imagine involve keep keep on\* (not) mind miss practise put off\* recommend suggest

Avoid making heavy jewellery.

I suggest practising with simple things.

For the negative we put not before the -ing form:

Can you imagine not having a car nowadays?

(\*See Unit 19 B5 for more information about phrasal verbs.)



## Verbs followed by the to infinitive or -ing

These verbs are usually followed by -ing but sometimes by the to infinitive:

begin continue like love prefer hate start

He continued talking loudly, or He continued to talk loudly. I prefer using a dictionary, or I prefer to use a dictionary.

Some verbs are followed by the to infinitive or -ing with a different meaning:

forget remember try stop

Verb + to infinitive	Verb + -ing
remember to	remember -ing
Remember to check the weight.	I remember making some earrings.
(= an action which will be necessary)	(= a memory of an action in the past)
forget to	forget -ing
Don't forget to phone me.	I'll never forget meeting her.
(= an action which will be necessary)	(= a memory of an action in the past)
try to	try -ing
Try to walk quickly. (= if you can)	Try taking more exercise. (= an experiment)
stop to	stop -ing
She stopped to rest.	He stopped shouting at us.
(= because she wanted to rest)	(= he finished doing tt)



## C Brandoor averages

Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use a verb from the box and any other words you need.

-advised agreed asked expected intended invited ordered promised refused -warned-

- 1 'Don't touch the wire, Claire.' said the teacher. The teacher wire.
- 2 'You should eat more fruit, Jane.' said the nurse. The nurse and all land and more fruit.
- 4 'I won't tell you anything, Sally.' said Lorna. Lorna ....... anything.
- 5 'Don't use this computer, Euan.' said Grant. Grant ..... the computer.
- 6 'Can you open the box for me, Zena?' asked Paul. Paul ..... the box for him.
- 7 'I won't forget the tickets.' said Mel. Mel ...... the tickets.
- 8 'I'm going to read ten books in one week.' said Brian. Brian ...... in one week.
- 9 'Would you like to stay at my house, Aziza?' said Helen. Helen ....... at her house.

abroo start

crave

Vu b

holid 8 sh

PS 1

Cray

- Match the beginnings and endings of these sentences.

  - 2 My maths teacher pretended ....... b me to check my email.
  - 3 My music teacher made ........... c the children watch a video.
  - 4 My boss reminded ...... d not to see me at the disco.
  - 5 I'd hate ...... e to see my passport.
  - 6 I let ..... f me take the exam.
- Fill in the gaps in this conversation with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

  - Ben: No, you carry on 2 \_\_\_eating \_\_\_ (eat). I don't feel hungry.

Complete each sentence with the correct form of a verb from the box.

change check contact look phone send spend travel

- 1 Remember ...... your grandmother a card on her birthday next week.
- 2 She stopped ..... at a poster and missed the train.
- 3 Do you remember ...... alone for the first time?
- 4 I'll never forget ...... three weeks in the rainforest.
- 5 Don't forget ...... your email before you leave home.
- 6 He tried ...... his hair colour, but he still looked awful.
- 7 Please stop ...... me at work, my boss doesn't allow personal calls.
- 8 I tried ..... my boss, but he was on a climbing holiday.

#### Underline the correct form of each verb.

#### Hi Pete

How are you? I'm on holiday by the sea. I'd hoped 1 to go/going abroad but I couldn't afford 2 fly/to fly anywhere because I started 3 to save/saving too late, But I don't mind 4 not to travel / not travelling abroad because this is a great place. My brother encouraged me 5 to come/coming. I'd love you 6 seeing/to see it. You should try 7 to get/getting a few days holiday so you can come here. My landlady will let you 8 share/to share my room. I hope 9 hear/to hear from you soon. Love Eric

PS Don't forget 10 to book/booking a seat on the coach if you travel at the weekend!



## D Exam practice

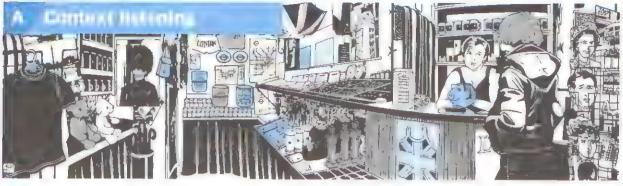
## **Reading Part 5**

Read the text below and choose the correct word for each space. For each question, mark the correct letter **A**, **B**, **C** or **D**.

xample: D (A) last	<b>B</b> earlier	<b>C</b> following	<b>D</b> late
		SLEE	
can sleep when hours per night problem is that	ever we want to during the weel if we (4) morning either!	Most people (2)  and (3)  getting up at t  Many of us (5)	bed soon after it got dark. Today, we to sleep between six and eight . to ten hours per night at weekends. The he weekend, then we don't want to getlike sleeping after lunch and in
people (7) (8) m (9) a	to keep w nost of us fail to sleep. The advic	orking all day with remember them. ! e for them is to (10	on. In (6)
people (7) (8) m (9) a	to keep w	orking all day with remember them. See for them is to (10 n the evening.	only a short break. We all have dreams  Some people find it difficult to  Laking more exercise and  D are
people (7)	to keep whost of us fail to sleep. The advicto drink coffee in B had B choose	orking all day with remember them. See for them is to (1) the evening.  C were C consider	only a short break. We all have dreams  Some people find it difficult to  ) taking more exercise and  D are D advise
people (7)	nost of us fail to sleep. The advicto drink coffee in B had B choose B above	orking all day with remember them. See for them is to (10) the evening.  C were C consider C over	only a short break. We all have dreams  Some people find it difficult to  Laking more exercise and  D are D advise D up
people (7)	b had b choose b refuse	orking all day with remember them. ! e for them is to (10 n the evening.  C were C consider C over C fail	D are D advise D force
people (7)	B had B choose B above B refuse B enjoy	orking all day with remember them. ! e for them is to (10 n the evening.  C were C consider C over C fail C prefer	D are D advise D force D feel
people (7)	B had B choose B above B enjoy B every	orking all day with remember them. See for them is to (10 n the evening.  C were C consider C over C fail C prefer C another	D are D advise D force D feel D other
people (7)	B had B choose B above B refuse B every B have	orking all day with remember them. See for them is to (10 n the evening.  C were C consider C over C fail C prefer C another C should	D are D advise D up D force D other D must
people (7)	B had B choose B above B enjoy B every	orking all day with remember them. See for them is to (10 n the evening.  C were C consider C over C fail C prefer C another	D are D advise D torce D feel D other

## Conditionals 1

zero conditional; first conditional: unless



- Look at the picture. You are going to hear Edina talking to Mrs Scott. She wants a job in Mrs Scott's shop. What kind of shop is it? Listen and check if you were right and answer these questions. 1 Why does Edina want to earn some money? 2 What kind of shop has she worked in before? 3 When will Edina start work? ...... M Listen again and complete the sentences below. 1 When I finish working here, I was town trace with the second of the se 2 If you work here on Sundays, you ..... 3 Customers get annoyed if ..... 5 You'll start work on Monday ...... 6 If I don't phone you tomorrow, you ...... 8 If I don't save as much as that, I Look at your answers to A3. 1 Which sentences are about things that are generally true? 2 Which sentences contain the will-future? Look at sentence 5 in A3. What does unless mean? Look at sentences 1 and 2 in A3.
- Does if mean the same as when?

#### Grammar

## Conditional sentences

Conditional sentences have two parts, a condition and a result:

condition result

If you work here, your evenings will be free.

result

condition

Your evenings will be free if you work here.

⚠ When the if part comes second, there is no comma.

The condition part usually starts with if. Different kinds of conditional sentences use different tenses. (See B2, B3, and Unit 23 B2.)

A When does not mean the same as if:

When I have \$2000 Plante Such America (= Flacertainly have \$2000 one day and then I'll go to South America.)

If I have 2000 Might Soul America (= Pernaps I'll have 2000 med a and perhaps I'll go to South America.)

#### **Zero conditional**

We use this for things which are generally true:

present present if +

present

if + present

If customers have to add they get annoy de Custom is get an royed if they have to a die

#### First conditional

We use this to talk about possible situations:

future if + present

future

if + present

If I save \$2000 I'll go is South America. I'll go to Sorch America if I save \$2000 (not If I'll save...)

If I don't save 1,000 I'll go rowal Large - I'll go round Large if I don't save 1000

(not If I won't save . )

If I save £1000, I won't go to Settin America = I won't go to South America if I save £1000 (not If I won't save ...)

#### Unless

Unless means 'if not'. We use it with zero and first conditionals:

Unless I phone you tomorrow, you'll start at nine o'clock.

= If I don't phone you tomorrow you'll start at nine o'clock.

The shop loses customers if the assistants aren't friendly.

Ine shop loses customers unless the uss stems are triently



## C Grammar exercises



Read this conversation and underline if or when.

Liz: I'm going to walk to the station to catch the London train.

Dan: But it may rain. Why not get a taxi?

Liz: Don't worry, I'll use my umbrella 1 if/when it rains.

Dan: Well, hurry up! 2 If/When you don't leave now, the train will go without you.

Liz: OK, I'm going. Goodbye.

Dan: Will you phone me 3 if/when you arrive in London?

Liz: I'll try to phone from the hotel 4 if/when I have time before my first meeting.

Dan: Leave a message 5 if/when I'm not in. I might be at the shops. Bye.

Liz: Bye.



Complete each sentence with your own idea.

- 2 Parties are fun if
- 3 Children are naughty if .....
- 4 People steal things if
- 5 I always phone my friends if ....
- 6 Politicians lose elections if



Complete each sentence with the correct form of a verb from the box.

become buy die eat not enjoy give learn make take tell

- 1 If you're tired, I'll make some coffee for you.
- 2 These flowers ..... if you forget to water them.
- 3 Many students ...... faster if they work with a friend.
- 4 We .....some fruit if we go to the market this afternoon.
- 5 If you don't want that sausage, the cat ...... it.
- 6 The bus driver ..... us when we reach our stop if we ask him.
- 7 Children .....school if the lessons are boring.
- 8 My boyfriend's parents ...... him a car if he passes all his exams.
- 9 If people don't get enough sleep, they .....ill.
- 10 I ...... you to the cinema if you help me finish this exercise.



Tara: Right. See you soon.

outside?

David: Sure. Bye.

David: OK. But 13 ...... (you/see) me if 14 ...... (I/wait)

David: I'll probably come on my bike unless 15 ...... (it/rain).

Sure. I'll watch out for you from the window.

## D faum pretten

#### **Reading Part 3**

Look at the sentences about a race in Canada called The Adventure Race.

Read the text to decide if each sentence is correct or incorrect.

If it is correct, mark A.

If it is incorrect, mark B.

- 1 The Adventure Race takes place in different countries at the same time.
- 2 Unless you succeed in a special test, you won't be able to do the race.
- 3 You should bring all the equipment on the list you're sent.
- 4 Everyone in your team should have the same nationality.
- 5 Teams need to have their routes planned at least one day before the race begins.
- 6 There's a limit on the time allowed between each checkpoint.
- 7 It won't matter if you miss one checkpoint.
- 8 If someone in your team can't continue, you'll have to stop too.
- 9 All four members of a team must cross the finishing line at the same time.
- 10 You'll receive £500 to spend on whatever you choose if your team wins.





# Adventure

The Adventure Race takes place in a different part of the world every year. This year, the race is in Canada and covers 300 miles. If you take part, you'll see some of the most beautiful scenery in the world. The race begins on 14 July. Part of the race is by horse, part by mountain bike and part by boat. You also walk and run so you need to have a wide range of outdoor skills.

Everyone must pass a skills test before they're allowed to start the race. You'll receive an equipment list when you apply for the race. This changes from year to year and you need to remember that everything on that list is essential. You supply your own food and drink so make sure you bring enough. If you don't bring plenty of food, you'll be hungry! Each team consists of four members, men and women and you must all come from one country. You need to be very fit but you also need to be able to work as part of a team.

1/1/

The starting and finishing points of the race remain secret to all those taking part until approximately 24 hours before the start. Teams can then choose their route as long as they pass certain checkpoints. The race takes between six and twelve days to complete. You won't be allowed to continue if you fail to reach each checkpoint by a certain time. Each team has a 'passport' which will be stamped at each checkpoint with the date and time of arrival. If one person is injured or decides not to carry on, the rest of the team won't be allowed to either.

The first team to cross the finishing line are the winners. You can't win as an individual, only as one member of the team you start with. There must be no more than 150 metres between the first and the last member of the team reaching the finishing line. All four members receive a plane ticket worth £500 to the place of their choice anywhere in the world. The second team to cross the line receive climbing equipment.

The race usually attracts the attention of the local press so you should be willing to be photographed and possibly interviewed. This is all good publicity for next year! If you're interested, we'll send you an application form as soon as we hear from you. Write to the address at the bottom of this page or look at our website on www.adventurerace.com.

#### Grammar focus task

Here are some sentences from the exam text and questions. Match the two halves and fill in the gaps with the correct tense of the verb in brackets.

- 1 If you ...take. (take) part,
- 2 When you ..... (apply) for the race,
- 3 If you ..... (not bring) plenty of food,
- 4 You ...... (not be) allowed to continue
- 5 If one person ...... (decide) not to carry on,
- 6 If you ..... (be) interested,
- 7 Unless you ..... (succeed) in a special test,
- 8 You ..... (receive) £500

- a you ..... (not be) able to do the race.
- b if your team ..... (win).
- c you ..... (receive) an equipment list.
- e the rest of the team ...... (not be) allowed to either.
- f we ..... (send) you an application form.
- g if you ...... (fail) to reach each checkpoint by a certain time.
- h you ..... (be) hungry.

## A Contast listantage





Patti works for a radio station. She is talking to Carl Ryder, a well-known songwriter. What things do you think he will tell her about?

his new house his last holiday his university studies life in the music business his family the clothes he likes

- Listen and check if you were right.
- Listen again and complete the sentences below.
  - 1 I wish I ...... more free time.
  - 2 I wish I .....so busy.
  - 3 If I ..... away now, I'd choose somewhere warm and sunny.
  - 4 I wouldn't want to talk to people if I ......songs to write.
  - 5 If I ...... a songwriter, I'd be a fashion designer.
- Look at your answers to A3 and answer these questions.
  - 1 What tense did you use to complete the sentences?
  - 2 Are Patti and Carl talking about the past? .....

#### **B** Grammar

## **Conditional sentences**

Conditional sentences have two parts, a condition and a result:

condition result

If I didn't have a lot of work, my evenings would be free.

The condition part usually starts with *if*. Different kinds of conditional sentences use different tenses. (See B2, and Unit 22.)

## **Second conditional**

We use this for imaginary situations, which we believe are nearly or completely impossible:

if + past would + infinitive

If I had now I'd would go to note one its (But I in venic got time, so I con't go to more concerts). If she liked no sur'd (would pronous concerts and I estal, I come so she probably won't phone me.)

If I didn't have are some extends, I would go to here are excised that I have an examinent week, so I won't go clubbing this weekend.)

or we can put the condition after the result:

would + infinitive if + past

I'd go some where he is it I didn't have an acre to be IBm I never weak to do so I won't zo somewhere lively!)

I wouldn't be let to most if I had coast. It that coasts the coasts as I'm of entropy of a Would I fail the exacts your if I went I who goes he coasts a "I peop by your coasts be clubbing, but I'm thinking about the possible result.)

 $\triangle$  The verb in the *if* part of the sentence is in the past tense although its meaning is present or future.

▲ We often use were instead of was after If I/he/she/it:

If he weren't (wasn't) a songwriter he'd be a fashion designer.

It I were was very burnache a home

#### B3 I wish

We use I wish + past for a wish about a present situation:

I wish I had more free time. (but I don't)

I wish I wasn't so busy. (but I am)

I wish I could speak Spanish. (but I can't)

⚠ We use a past tense, although we are talking about now.

⚠ We often use were instead of was after I/he/she/it:

Lieish Lwere was leer (bus im not)



## C Grammar exercises

- Read the first sentence in each pair, then complete the advice in the second sentence.
  - 1 You don't talk to people at parties.
    You would enjoy parties if you \_\_\_\_\_talked\_\_\_\_ to people.

  - 3 You eat too much cheese.

    You wouldn't have spots if you .....too much cheese.

  - 5 You never give presents to your friends.
    You would be more popular if you ...... presents to your friends.
  - 6 You make jokes about your classmates.

    If you ......jokes about your classmates, they would like you better.
- Read the first sentence in each pair, then complete the advice in the second sentence.





- 1 You don't revise before exams so you don't get good marks.
  You \_\_\_\_\_'d\_get\_\_\_\_\_ good marks if you revised before exams.
- 2 You drink coffee after supper and then you can't sleep well.
  You ........ well if you didn't drink coffee after supper.
- 4 You spend all your money on clothes so you don't have any for books.

  You ...... enough money for books if you didn't spend it all on clothes.
- 5 You lose things because you never tidy your room.

  You ...... things if you tidied your room.
- 6 You're late every morning because you spend hours in the shower.

  If you didn't spend hours in the shower, you ......late every morning.

_					
_		8	7		
-1			-	۸.	
ш		•			
-1	N	_		-	

Noel is Danny's older brother. Danny is jealous of Noel. Read what Danny says and then complete the sentences below.

Noel is handsome, but I'm not. He has straight dark hair, but mine is light brown and curly. He works in a sports club. He earns lots of money and owns a motorbike. He lives in the city centre, but I live in a village with our parents. He's twenty-two and I'm only thirteen and a half. When I'm twenty-two I want to be like Noel.

Fo

1	I wish I	handsome.	5	I wish Ia motorbike.
2	I wish I	curly hair.	6	I wish I in a village.
3	Lwish I	in a sports club.	7	I wish I thirteen and a half.

4 I wish I .....lots of money.

Complete this email with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

## 888

#### Hi Suzanne

How are you? It's very boring here. I wish there 1 ...... (be) some clubs and good shops. We spend every holiday in the Highlands because my father likes it. If my father 2 ...... (not want) to go climbing we 3 ..... (stay) in Edinburgh with my uncle's family. I wish we 4 ...... (not come) to the same place every year. I don't think my mother likes it here either. She 5 ...... (enjoy) going to museums if we 6 ..... (go) to Edinburgh. And I 7 ...... (meet) new people if I 8 .....(go) clubbing with my cousins. If I 9..... (have) more money I 

Email me soon.

LOL Victoria



Complete these sentences with your own ideas.

- 1 If I won the lottery, 1 Trave road for well.
- 2 If I were a fashion model, 3 If everyone liked pop music,
- 4 If exams were always easy, .....
- 5 If I lived in Hawaii,
- 6 If I spoke perfect English,
- 7 If politicians told the truth, ..... 8 I wish I had

## O fixam proatter

#### **Reading Part 4**

Read the text and questions below.

For each question, mark the correct letter – A, B, C or D.

## Visit to the Arctic Circle

I was the only person to get off the train at 4pm at Abisko in the Arctic Circle. The train disappeared into the night. I was alone, in the dark, with the temperature at minus 20, as cold as I'd expected it. At that point I thought about giving up this trip and wished I were on my way back home but the train had gone and I could see a hotel ahead.

The girl at reception gave me the key to a 'cabin' as the rest of the hotel was closed. I went back outside. I could see by the light from the hotel and found the cabin easily. My hands were frozen as I turned the key in the lock and pushed the door which refused to move. I pushed it harder. I was thinking of breaking a window to prevent myself from freezing to death when I took my hand off the handle and the door opened gently towards me.

After recovering in the warmth of the cabin, which was actually very comfortable, I went outside again. I realised I wasn't completely alone as I saw car headlights on the road nearby. It was a clear evening full of red, green and blue light in the frozen air. It was so beautiful I wanted to write a poem about it but I had no paper. I could only spend ten minutes outside at a time so I went in and out of the cabin to watch the amazing Northern Lights. I only spent three days there. I was sorry I'd booked a ticket on the train to continue my journey so soon.

- 1 What is the writer trying to do?
  - A persuade other people to visit the Arctic Circle
  - B describe his own experiences in the Arctic Circle
  - C give advice on travelling to the Arctic Circle
  - D explain why he decided to go to the Arctic Circle
- 2 When he got off the train, the writer felt
  - A confused about what to do next.
  - B surprised at how cold it was.
  - C worried about finding a hotel.
  - D sorry he was not still on it.

- 3 What was the problem when the writer got to the cabin?
  - A He pushed the door instead of pulling it.
  - B The key didn't turn because of the frozen lock.
  - C He couldn't see what he was doing.
  - D He had to break a window to get in.
- 4 How did the writer spend the evening?
  - A He stayed inside the cabin and looked out at the stars.
  - B He tried to write about what he could see.
  - C He walked along the road towards a light.
  - D He went outside for short periods of time.
- 5 What did the writer put in his diary that day?
  - A I'm sorry I came here as there's nothing to do in the dark.
  - The best thing about being here is seeing the night sky.

- If I had a car, I could drive around and see more of the area.
- It's a pity this is the only room the hotel could offer me.

#### kirammar foous task

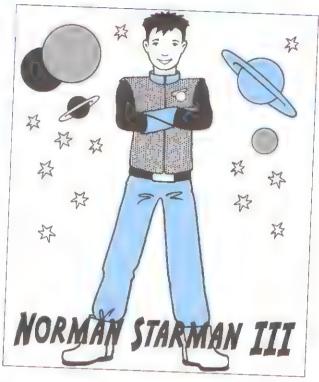
What did the writer think? Complete these sentences.

- 1 I wish I ..... on the train again.
- 2 If it ...... dark.
- 3 If the hotel ...... open, I ..... there.
- 4 I wish this door ..... open.
- 5 If it ..... warmer, I ..... more time outside.
- 6 I ...... a poem if I ...... some paper.
- 7 I wish I ..... stay here longer.

## A Context listenin

Alan is talking to his friend Maria about a series of science fiction films. Underline the words you think you'll hear.

alien army earth experiment flower garage human planet scientist spaceship



A	Listen and check if you were right. Tick the words you hear.	
	Does Maria decide to see the film?	
AT	Listen again and complete the sentences below.	
	1 The first two Starman films and the about three years ago.	
	2 The main part to a different actor.	
	3 He to their planet.	
	4 But the spaceship when they land although they luckily.	,
	5 Norman by the army.	
	6 The aliens, I guess, and then they'll go back their planet again.	
Af	Look at your answers to A3. They are all passive verbs.	
	How do we make the passive in the present? the past? the future?	

## (1 Hammer





#### Active

#### **Passive**

We use the correct form of to be + past participle to make the passive. (See Unit 6 and p.viii for past participles.)

Active		Passive
I/you/we/they catch	$\rightarrow$	I am caught/You/we/they are caught
He/she/it catches	$\rightarrow$	He/she/it is caught
I/you/he/she/it/we/they will catch	$\rightarrow$	I/you/he/she/it/we/they will be caught
I/you/he/she/it/we/they caught	$\rightarrow$	I/you/he/she/it/we/they were caught
to catch	$\rightarrow$	to be caught

We often use the passive when

- we don't know who or what does something: My car was stolen.
  - The spaceship is damaged.
- it is obvious or unimportant who does something:

My train was cancelled.

The aliens are waiting to be rescued.

Was anyone hurt in the accident?

Letters aren't delivered on bank holidays.

If the person who did something is important we use by + person:

#### Active

#### **Passive**

Muns caught Norman & Norman, was caught by active

-C1, C2, E3, S



#### To have something done

When other people do a job for us, we can say we have something done. We do not usually say who did it.

We use the correct form of have + noun + past participle:

She has the spaceship repaired. (= The garage repairs the spaceship.)

I had my hair coloured. (= The hairdresser coloured my hair.)

We'll have a new house designed as Arranged will design a new house for its)

-00

#### C Grammar exercises

- Look at the underlined verbs in these sentences. Label each one A for active or P for passive.
  - 1 I'm not allowed to drive my parents' car.
  - 2 Our test was marked by the head teacher but our class teacher told us the results.
  - 3 My brother is having a party tonight and you're invited.
  - 4 The letters were sent to the wrong address and we never saw them.
  - 5 This painting will be finished at the weekend and I think it'll be good.
  - 6 I paid the taxi driver before I opened the door.
  - 7 Important visitors expect to be met at the airport.
  - 8 We want to find a cheap hotel.
  - 9 If the house needs to be cleaned, I'll help you.
- What happens when a singer does a tour? There's lots of work to be done. Look at these notes and write sentences using the present passive.

1	plan the tour	The tour is planned.
2	book the plane tickets	
3	send contracts to concert hall managers	
4	reserve hotel rooms	
5	design posters	
6	hire musicians	

Fill in the gaps in this magazine article using the past passive.



- Complete the second sentence so it means the the same as the first, using no more than three words.
  - 1 This shop is owned by my uncle.

My uncle ..... this shop.

2 That birthday card was made by my little sister.

My little sister ..... that birthday card.

3 Charles Dickens wrote this letter.

This letter ..... by Charles Dickens.

4 This lunch will be enjoyed by all our guests.

All our guests ...... this lunch.

5 Teenagers don't visit the museum.

The museum ...... by teenagers.

6 Those emails were read by my boss!

My boss ..... those emails!

7 That text wasn't received by my mother.

My mother ..... that text.

8 This match will be watched by five million football fans.

Five million football fans ..... this match.

9 Bono wore these jeans.

These jeans ..... by Bono.

10 This music won't be played by disc jockeys.

Disc jockeys ..... this music.

Read this pop singer's web page about preparing for a concert. Fill in the gaps with the correct form of to have something done and the words in brackets.

10 +

Before a concert my manager 1 ..nas\_tne\_dressing\_tcom\_painted\_ (dressing-room/paint) pink, because that's my favourite colour.

He 2 ...... (the furniture/change) too, if I don't

like it. When I arrive I 3 ...... (nails/paint)

and 14 ..... (my hair/wash). I also

5 ...... (my clothes/iron). Then the musicians

come in for a chat. If we're hungry, we 6

(a meal/deliver). Then we do the show.



- Q-

2

3

#### D Exam practice

#### **Reading Part 2**

The people below all want to do a sports course.

On the next page there are eight sports courses.

Decide which course would be the most suitable for the following people.

For questions 1-5, mark the correct letter (A-H).

1



Joe wants to go horse-riding every day and also do some other sports. He wants to do a course which provides organised social activities in the evening.

2



Rob wants to have some fun and meet people while he does a sports course for a few days. He'd like to learn to swim and have the chance to play football and rugby.

3



Claudia is looking for a tennis course in the mornings only so she has the rest of the day to relax and explore on her own.

4



Norman is keen on surfing and wants a chance to improve his skills. He would also like to play some tennis.

5



Ellen wants to go mountain-biking or climbing. She doesn't want any other sports and hates cooking. She would like to spend her evenings with other people.

#### **Sports courses**

- A The Sports Institute runs courses in squash, tennis, dancing and gymnastics. Choose between a morning or an afternoon course. Visits to places of interest are also arranged for anyone interested. All students are given a free ticket to use at the local swimming pool.
- C Action Sport was started twenty-five years ago and offers several courses. Choose from mountain-biking, climbing and horse-riding in the mornings and in the afternoons everyone is expected to take part in a team sport like basketball, volleyball, football or rugby. A different event is organised every evening such as a theatre visit, a quiz night or a disco.
  - E Sports for All offers courses during which you can learn new skills and make new friends at the organised social events. Lessons are offered in swimming, diving, or athletics. There are several free hours every afternoon when everyone is encouraged to play football, hockey, rugby or tennis together.
- G Sun Sports is based in a large hotel on the coast.

  Book for one day or several days up to one week.

  A wide range of watersports is offered at the beach centre, both for beginners and those who are more experienced. Golf, tennis, swimming and volleyball are also available in the hotel.

- B Courses in climbing and horse-riding are available at the **Hillside Centre**. Groups are also taken on mountain-bikes into the hills by guides. Everyone helps to make the meals and transport is provided into the town in the evenings for entertainment.
- D At **Brookside** there are watersports courses on the lake and swimming lessons in the indoor pool. Horse-riding lessons are also available. They don't provide food but the accommodation has modern kitchens.
- F If you want to get away from the city for a week, the Activity Centre is the place for you. Groups go climbing, walking, mountain-biking or running in the surrounding mountains. You stay in a hostel where you have all your meals cooked for you. In the evenings social events are organised.
- H At the Carlton Centre you can have personal training in the sport of your choice. It is well-known for its football and rugby but also offers courses in sailing and water-skiing. It is close to nightclubs and restaurants for evening entertainment.

#### Grammar focus task

Complete these sentences with an active verb. For each one, there is a passive sentence in the exam task with the same meaning.

- 1 The Sports Institute \_\_arranges \_\_ visits to places of interest.
- 2 The local swimming pool ...... a free entry ticket to all students.
- 3 Guides ...... groups into the hills on mountain-bikes.
- 4 The Hillside Centre ..... transport into the town.
- 5 In the afternoons Action Sport ...... everyone to take part in a team sport.
- 6 Action Sport ...... a different event every evening.
- 7 Sports for All .....lessons in swimming, diving or athletics.
- 8 Sports for All ..... everyone to play football, hockey, rugby or tennis together.

Reported speech 1 reporting what someone said; words which change

G	
A1.	Look at the picture. What do you think the woman is saying?
12	You are going to hear Nick telling his friend Will about what happened. Answer these questions.
	1 How did Nick's mother feel when she got home? 4 What had Nick's mother paid him to do?
	2 What hadn't Nick done? 5 Why can't Nick go out tonight?
	3 What did Nick offer to do? 6 What does Will offer to do?
AS	Listen again and write the words Nick uses when he reports his conversation with his mother.
	1 She said I go out because I tidied the house.
	2 She said she visitors and the house dirty and untidy.
	3 I said I wash up.
	4 She said my friends help too.
	5 I said I washed the car the week before.
	6 She said she going to keep my pocket money.
A	Here are the words Nick and his mother actually said. Match them to the reported sentences above. <u>Underline</u> the words which change.
	Nick: I'll wash up. a
	Mum: You can't go out because you haven't tidied the house. b
	Nick: I washed the car last week. c
	Mum: I'm expecting visitors and the house is dirty and untidy. d
	Mum: Your friends should help too. e
	Mum: I'm going to keep your pocket money. f
	Look at the years have underlined Which years decent change?

## Reporting what someone said

After a reporting verb like said, we usually change the tenses.

present si	imple → past simple
The house is dirty.	She said (that) the house was dirty.
present contin	nuous → past continuous
I'm expecting visitors.	She said (that) she was expecting visitors.
past sim	ple → past perfect
I washed the car,	I said (that) Pd I had washed the car
present pe	erfect → past perfect
You haven't tidied the house.	She said I hadn't tidied the house.
am goin	g to $\rightarrow$ was going to
Im / I am going to keep your pocket money.	She said (that) she was going to keep my pocket money.
14	vill → would
I'll / I will wash up.	I said (that) I'd / would wash up.
C	can → could
You can't go out.	She said I couldn't go out.

Th

I I c

too tor ne: no he:

#### ▲ could/would/should/might don't change:



I couldn't understand. → He said that he couldn't understand.





You mends should help - She said of provide should help



The past perfect doesn't change:



I hadn't expected her to come home early. → He said that he hadn't expected her to come home early.



When we report must

We change must to had to:



You must stay at home. → She said I had to stay at home.



- We don't change mustn't:



You mustn't do that again. → She said I mustn't do that again.



-64, -

#### **B2** Words which change

We often need to change pronouns when we report what someone said:  $I \rightarrow he$  or she,  $you \rightarrow them$  or us,  $my \rightarrow his$  or he,  $we \rightarrow they$ ,  $our \rightarrow their$ Lean't go out a universe he was my another s' operate range, my then s and s and s are s and s and s and s are s and s and s are s and s and s are s and s ar

Words about time and place also change:

 $today \rightarrow that \ day$   $tonight \rightarrow that \ night$ 

 $tomorrow \rightarrow the next day$   $yesterday \rightarrow the day before$ 

 $next week \rightarrow the following week$  last  $week \rightarrow the week before$ 

 $now \rightarrow then$   $this \rightarrow that$ 

 $here \rightarrow there$ 

I often buy bread here nothis snop - 8b × ad six of a beyond by A there on that snot [ - 3]



## C Grammar exercises

Co	emplete each sentence so that it means the same as the first.
1	He said he was hungry. I
2	They said they were going to be late. We late.
3	She said she had never flown in a helicopter before.  I
4	She said they had to get a taxi home. You get a taxi home.
5	They said they'd bought a new computer the day before. We
6	He said she should try harder. You try harder.
7	She said she was waiting for her friend. [I for my friend.]
8	He said he loved cheese. [I
9	She said she would send me an email the next day. I you an email tomorrow.
10	He said his brother was looking for a new job. My brother for a new job.
A	queue of people are waiting outside a new restaurant. Report what they said.
1	'I'll come back later.' He said he would come back later.
2	'We can't get a table.' They said they a table.
3	'We arrived at 6 pm.' They said they at 6 pm.
4	'We're going to wait.' They said they
5	'I've never eaten Thai food before.' He said he Thai food before.
6	'The restaurant is too small.' She said the restaurant too small.
7	'There won't be a free table for at least an hour.' They said there a free table for at least an hour.
8	'We'd expected to get a table.' They said they to get a table.
9	
10	'We're going home.' They said they home.



Look at a policeman's report and then fill in the gaps in the conversation below. Change the underlined words.

#### WPOLICE

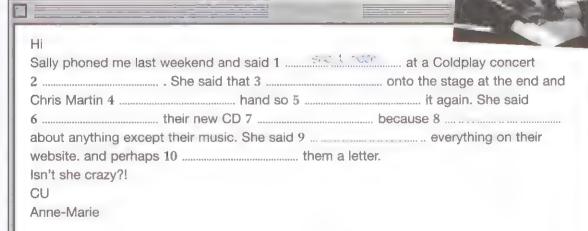
A woman called the police station about a car parked near her flat. I went to the street to talk to her.

She told me that she had seen the car several times before. She said she'd seen it there the week before for the first time. But the day before two men had got out. They'd looked at all the houses in that street. I asked her if I could phone her that evening or the next day to ask some more questions. She agreed.

Policeman:	Can (1) tell me about the car please?
Woman:	(2)saw it
	(4) (5) for the first time. But (6) two
	men got out. They looked at all the houses in (7) street.
Policeman:	Can I phone (8) (9) or (10) to ask
	some more questions?
Woman:	Of course.

Read what Sally said to Anne-Marie on the phone, then complete the email which Anne-Marie sent to her brother later.

'I was at a Coldplay concert yesterday. I climbed onto the stage at the end. Chris Martin kissed my hand so I'll never wash it again! I'm going to get their new CD tomorrow. I can't think about anything except their music! I've read everything on their website. Perhaps I might write them a letter.'



## D Exam proctice

#### Writing Part 1

Here are some sentences about a flat.

For each question, complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

This task tests grammar from the rest of the book

as well as the

this unit.

Use no more than three words.

Exam	1	_
-vam	nie	۰
	PUL	9

0.1	moved	to	this	flat	one	week	ago.
V 1	THUYOU	10	CHILL	TIGAL	VIIV	AACCIV	ugo,

I've lived in this flat ...... one week.

1 My cousin lived here before.

My cousin used ......here.

2 He said he wanted to live in a bigger flat.

He said '..... to live in a bigger flat.'

3 It's nicer than my friend's flat.

My friend's flat isn't ...... this flat.

4 It's got a lovely view over the river.

There \_\_\_\_\_ a lovely view over the river.

5 My friend said she'd never seen a view like it.

My friend said 'I ...... a view like it.'

#### Grammer focus task

Here are some more things people said about the flat. Report them.

- 1 My father said 'I don't like the colour of the walls.'
  - My father said he ...... the colour of the walls.
- 2 My boyfriend said 'I can help you paint them.'
  - My boyfriend said he ...... me paint them.
- 3 My mother said 'I'll lend you some curtains.'
  - My mother said she ..... me some curtains.
- 4 My brother said 'I'm going to visit you soon.'
  - My brother said he ...... visit me soon.

## Reported speech 2

said and told; other verbs used for reporting; reporting questions; polite questions

## thomas listening



A journalist called Tim has written a newspaper report about a footballer, Joe Chapman. His boss wrote the headline. Does the report match the headline?

## CHAPMAN: THE GIRLFRIENDS, THE TV CAREER, THE MONEY

Tim Donnelly finds out about Joe Chapman's life away from the football field.

Last season Joe Chapman scored more goals than any other player and he's become one of our star players. But where were the goals on Saturday in the away match? There weren't any. This is because he hurt his knee in training and isn't fully fit. So what plans does loe have? He's had offers to join other teams but isn't interested. He wants to see United win the cup this year for the third time.



AS	You are going to hear Tim talking about the report. Why is his boss angry?
AI	Listen again and tick the questions Tim asked.

- 1 Have you got a new girlfriend? 2 Why didn't you score any goals on Saturday? ✓
- 3 Who were you with at that nightclub?
- 4 Does your mother always watch your games?
- 5 Did you argue with the new manager?
- 6 How long are you going to stay with the team?
- 7 What do you do in your free time?
- 8 When will we see your TV programme?
- 9 How much do you earn from adverts?
- 10 Will your team win the cup?
- Look at the recording script on page 194. Find these sentences and fill in the gaps.
  - 1 I asked him \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_ any goals on Saturday.
  - 2 I asked him ...... his mother always ...... his games.
- Look at the questions you ticked in A3.
  - 1 Which questions can we answer with Yes or No? .....
  - 2 Which questions begin with a question word?

#### Look at your answers to A4.

- 3 When do we use if to report questions?
- 4 What do you notice about the word order when we report a question? .....

#### **B** Grammar

#### **B1** said and told

When we report what someone said we often use said or told.

said: It said (thut) they would win.

He said to me (that) they would win.

not He said me (thut) they would win.

told: not He win (mat) they would with.

not He wild to me (that) they would win.

He told me (that) they would win.

▲ Remember the tense changes too (see Unit 25).

-C1

#### Other verbs used for reporting

We sometimes use the infinitive (to ...) after tell and ask:

Be careful. -> I told him to be careful.

Please don't take any protographs - He asked a not to take one, pin agrains

and also after some other reporting verbs:

Would you like to have lench with no " . I invited have to have lunch with me

Write a new article! -> He ordered me to write a new article.

Remember to watch the match . He reminded rue to watch in medical

→C2, 41

#### **Reporting questions**

There are two kinds of question:

- questions which begin with a question word (how, which, when, what, who, why, where, how long)
- questions we can answer with Yes or No

#### Q-word question

How's your knee?
Where will you play?
Why didn't you score

#### Reporting verb + Q-word + statement

- → Tim asked Joe how his knee was. (not how was his knee)
- → Tim asked Joe where he would play. (not where would he play)
- Im, astella it, so ha a ser of (not who hadre be severed)

#### Yes/No question

Are menapy v

#### Reporting verb + if/whether + statement

- In: sailer if whether he was hear to (not it whether was he happy)

Does vow mother al case watch' - I in secal for if whether second as eached not it whicher did she always watch)

A Remember the tense changes too (see Unit 25).

We sometimes use a different verb instead of asked: How much do you earn?  $\rightarrow$  I wanted to know how much he earned.

Will they win?  $\rightarrow$  I wondered if they would win.

-CÁ

#### Polite questions

When we ask politely for information we use the same word order as in reported questions: (an you till me when the match stars' (not (are you tell me when the match start')

I'd like to know if there are any rich is left (not let tike to know are more any newers left?)

▲ We don't change the tense.

→C5

#### C Grammar exercises

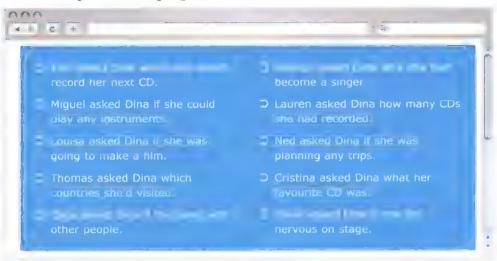
- Underline the correct word, said or told.
  - 1 My cousin said/told he'd like to come and stay with us.
  - 2 Sarah said/told us she'd enjoyed her holiday.
  - 3 Craig said/told goodbye to us and left the room.
  - 4 When I invited them they said/told they were busy.
  - 5 I said/told Frances that I was going to watch television all evening.
  - 6 The shop assistant said/told that the shop was closed on Wednesdays.
  - 7 She said/told she hated cooking.
  - 8 The bus driver said/told the passengers the bus had broken down.
- Some students are going on a sailing trip. Their teacher tells them to do these things. Complete the sentences.
  - 1 Get up early. He told them to get up early.
  - 2 Have breakfast. He told them ......
  - 3 Don't be late. He told them ......
  - 4 Wear a hat. He told them .....
  - 5 Don't wear leather shoes. He told them .....
  - 6 Bring a packed lunch. He told them ......
  - 7 Don't bring expensive cameras. He told them ......
  - 8 Don't fall in! He told them ......

Read what people said on the left. Then complete each sentence on the right with a word from the box. You can use some of the words twice.

#### asked advised invited ordered reminded

- 1 Could you fill in a form please?  $\rightarrow$  He \_\_\_asked\_\_\_ me to fill in a form.
- 2 Remember to take your keys. → She ...... them to take their keys.
- 3 Tidy your room immediately! → She ...... them to tidy their room.
- 4 Would you like to watch a DVD with me? → She ...... him to watch a DVD with her.
- 5 Don't forget to phone Jim.  $\rightarrow$  She ...... him to phone Jim.
- 6 Would you walk more slowly please?  $\rightarrow$  He ....... her to walk more slowly.
- 7 Don't move.  $\rightarrow$  He ..... them not to move.

On a TV programme, the audience asks a singer called Dina some questions. Here is the report on the programme's website.



#### Write the questions the audience asked.

- 1 Kim: 'And Is at routh, at next CD ?
- 2 Miguel: '.....?'
- 3 Louisa: '.....?'
- 5 Olga: '.....?'
- 6 George: '.....?'
- 8 Ned: '....?'
- 10 Olivia: '....?'



## Some tourists are asking a tourist guide some questions. They aren't very polite. Rewrite their questions politely.

- 1 What will we eat tonight?
- 2 Is there a swimming pool?
- 3 Does this city have underground trains? Can you tell me .......
- 4 How long are we staying here?
- 5 Are we going on a river trip?
- 6 Where is the nearest bank?
- 7 Can the hotel change my room?
- 8 When does it get dark?

- I'd like to know and at irat
- Can you tell me
- I'd like to know .....
- I'd like to know
- Can you tell me

### O Examplestice

#### **Reading Part 4**

Read the text and questions below.

For each question, mark the correct letter **A**, **B**, **C** or **D**.

## My problem

My name's Jade, I'm fifteen and an only child living with my parents in Porchester. I've always got on very well with them and I've always felt happy at home.

Last autumn my cousin Bettina came to live our house. She's nineteen, and very pretty and funny. She's staying with us while she's a student at the university in Porchester. At first, I was very pleased to have another teenager in our house, because most of my friends don't live near me, but recently my feelings have changed.

I have lots of homework because I'm studying for school exams, but I have to clean my room and help with the washing-up. Bettina doesn't have exams this year so she doesn't have to work so hard. She has more money than me. She earns a bit because my dad helped her get a part-time job, and because it's at the local leisure centre she

doesn't pay the full price for tickets to see films there or go bowling with her friends. And although she doesn't pay rent to my parents they don't make her help in the house like I have to.

When I mentioned this to my parents they reminded me that we have to be kind to Bettina because her dad hasn't been well for a long time. I agree with that but there is a problem: I know Bettina tells lies to my parents. Last week, she told my dad that she was going to the library but she went to meet her boyfriend. Two days ago she asked my mum to lend her some money. She said she needed to buy some books, but I think she spent it all on CDs.

I asked my parents if they knew what she had done, but they didn't believe me. They said I was jealous of her and refused to listen to me.

I'd like to know what I should do now.

- 1 What is Jade trying to do?
  - A describe her older cousin
  - B explain why she has problems with school work
  - C say why she doesn't like being an only child
  - D explain a problem she has at home
- 2 When Bettina arrived, how did Jade feel?
  - A She was jealous of Bettina's good looks.
  - **B** She hoped Bettina could help her with nomework.
  - C She was happy to have her to stay.
  - **D** She wanted Bettina to meet her friends.

- 3 What does the writer say about Bettina's job?
  - A She earns a lot of money.
  - B She gets cheap tickets because of it.
  - C She hasn't told Jade's parents about it.
  - **D** She works when she should be studying.
- 4 Jade's parents asked her to remember
  - A that Bettina's family has problems.
  - B that she isn't as old as Bettina.
  - C that Bettina has many responsibilities.
  - D that Jade's father is ill.
- 5 Which of these things did Jade say to her parents?



I want to get a job so that I can earn money like Bettina.



It's not fair that I have to help in the house and Bettina doesn't.



Bettina's father should pay you more for her accommodation.



Bettina gets cheap cinema tickets her friends but not for me.

#### Grammar focus task

Look at the parts of the text which report these sentences and underline any changes which you find.

- 1 I'm going to the library. She told my dad that she was going to the library.
- 2 Could you lend me some money?
- 3 I need to buy some books.
- 4 Do you know what she's done?
- 5 We don't believe you.
- 6 You're jealous of her.
- 7 We won't listen to you.
- 8 What should I do now?

## Relative clauses

27/

willoh; who and that; whose and where

## A Context Halantes

Look at the names of the TV programmes below. Match three of them with the pictures.

documentary news sports programme quiz soap opera cookery programme







- Look at the words you have written.
  - 1 Can you take out any of the words and keep the same meaning? .....
  - 2 Which of the words can you replace with that? .....

#### E limmir

#### **Relative** clauses

We can give information about someone, something or somewhere by adding a relative clause. We use a relative pronoun: who, which, whose, where or that:

relative pronoun

This is the sitting room which belongs to the Baxter family.

relative clause

#### Which, who and that

We use which to join two ideas about a thing or things:

Here's a photo. It shows them on their wedding day.

Here's a photo which shows them on their wedding day.

not Here's a photo which it shows them on their wedding day. (it = a photo)

We use who to join two ideas about a person or people:

We have different presenters. They're experts.

We have different presenters who are experts.

not We have different presenters who they are experts. (they = presenters)

We can use that instead of who or which:

Here's a photo that shows them on their wedding day.

We have different presenters that are experts.

→C1

#### No relative pronoun

Sometimes the verb in the relative clause has a new subject:

You can see the café which Mark owns. (the café is not the subject of owns)

We don't need to use who or that in the sentence above:

You can see the café Mark owns.

but we need who or that when there is no new subject.

Compare:

liver choice it I be re wehich that the receiver at the end of the subject the near each

They choose the stories which will be in the news. (no new subject)

Here's a footballer (who) you'll recognise. (new subject: you)

Here's a popular who pared for a giral he new sameet.

146

#### Where and whose

We use where to join two ideas about a place. It means at/in which. It cannot be left out or replaced by that:

Here's the desk where the newsreader sits. (not where the newsreader sits at) (= Here's the desk. The newsreader sits at that desk.)

We use whose with a noun to mean his/her/their/its. It cannot be left out or replaced by that:

Jack's the man whose old must are said (= ].ed's the man + [1,8] at poots were sold.)

## Grammar exercises Join these pairs of sentences with who or which. 1 I've got a ring. It belonged to my grandmother. I've got a ring which belonged to my grandmether. 2 My sister has a beautiful leather jacket. It cost £200. My sister has a beautiful leather jacket ..... 3 I have a penfriend. He lives in Australia. I have a penfriend .... 4 This is the computer. It doesn't work. This is the computer ..... 5 Those are the singers. They won a music competition on television last night. Those are the singers 6 My brother told me about his friend. She worked for a film company. My brother told me about his friend ...... Read these sentences. Decide which ones don't need who, which or that and cross it out. 1 Sandra is the teacher who we invited to tea. 2 Here's the book which I promised to lend you. 3 Why did you change the plan that we made? 4 That's the hotel which has a swimming pool on the roof. 5 Where's the bunch of flowers that you bought yesterday? 6 Elaine wrote to the university that had offered her a place. 7 This is the letter that caused all our problems. 8 I emailed all the people who my boss wanted to see. 9 Andrew is the man who won the science prize. 10 When will you finish the work which I asked you to do? Complete these sentences with who, which, whose or where. 1 I met a man ...... plays football for Germany. 2 This is the library ...... I usually study. 3 That's the woman ...... daughter won the chess prize. 4 That's the girl ...... my brother is going to marry.

6 Please show me the cuphoard ...... you keep your cleaning materials.

5 We lost the map ...... you drew for us.

- 7 Mungo opened the present ...... his friends gave him.
- 8 Can you tell me the name of the man ...... car you borrowed?
- 9 Gabrielle painted the picture ...... hangs in our sitting-room.
- 10 I have a friend lives in Barcelona.

Look at sentences 1-10 again. In which sentences can you cross out the relative pronoun?

Read this conversation between Emily and her father. Fill in the gaps in the conversation with relative clauses using the information in the box.



- 1 May plays in Emily's volleyball team.
- 2 Alec lived next door when Emily was small.
- 3 Bernard gave Emily guitar lessons last year.
- 4 Emily met Ailsha at Spanish lessons.
- 5 They are staying at a guesthouse called Sunny Villa.

Or

Fo

2

5

- 6 The party will be at a club called the Beach House.
- 7 Emily has bought a present for Herman.
- 8 They're going to Herman's party.

Emily: Dad, I want to go away with some friends for Herman's birthday party. Dad: Who are these friends? Emily: May, Alec, Bernard, Ailsa and Herman. The party's at the Beach House. Dad: But I don't know these people. Who's May? Emily: She's a girl 1 was 11 to none south town. Dad: And who's Alec? Emily: Dad, you know Alec. He's the boy 2 ...... Dad: Oh, yes. Well, who's Bernard? I don't know him. Emily: No, but, Mum knows him. He's the boy 3 Dad: I see, And Ailsa, who's Ailsa? Sunny Villa's the guesthouse 5 And what's this Beach House? Emily: The Beach House is the club 6 Dad: What's that parcel? Emily: It's the present 7 Dad: And who's Herman?

Emily: Oh Dad! He's the boy 8 ...... Dad: Oh, I see. I suppose it's all right if your mother agrees.

#### Europ posielici

#### **Reading Part 2**

The people below all want to go out to have a meal.

On the next page there are eight places to eat.

Decide which place would be the most suitable for the following people.

For questions 1-5 mark the correct letter (A-H).



Mark is going out with some friends on Wednesday evening. They'd like to have an Indian meal. They want to go to a restaurant which they can drive to and park at easily.





Ulla is meeting a friend for lunch on Friday in the town centre. She wants to eat a salad and would like to be able to sit outside.





Heidi and her boyfriend are going to the cinema in the town centre at 8.15 on Sunday evening. They want to have a quick meal nearby before they see the film.





Will is going out with his father for a meal on Monday evening. They both like fish and want to go to a restaurant which has a pleasant view.





lan's grandparents are celebrating their wedding anniversary and the whole family are going out on Saturday evening. They need a restaurant which serves a range of dishes to suit everyone. It must have a car park.

- A Martin's is in the town centre and is very popular with people who work in the local offices. It is open Monday–Friday lunchtime from 12–2 and in the evening from 5–10. It offers simple dishes and a fast service. Choose from hot dishes, soup or sandwiches.
- C The Taj Mahal is an excellent Indian restaurant which is about 2 km from the town centre. It is on one of the main roads out of the town and has a large car park. It is open lunchtimes at weekends and every evening.
- E The Rainbow is in the town centre and has a very nice terrace where you can sit and watch what's happening in the market square. It is open every day from 11–5 except Wednesday. It serves salads and sandwiches which are all specially made to order but service is fast.
- **G** If you enjoy a good view, **the Fountain** is the place to go. It's the only restaurant whose windows look over a lake. It's in the middle of the park so you need to allow 15 minutes to walk there from the road where you can park. It serves a wide range of food from fish to salads to vegetarian dishes

- B The Roma Restaurant is a new restaurant by the river, owned by an Italian family. It serves pizza and pasta which the family make themselves. There is a terrace which overlooks the river so you can sit and watch the boats go by. It is open every day from 11 until 5.30 and is very close to the shops and main car parks.
- D The Corner House is 50 years old and still owned by the same family. It's in the industrial part of the town. The menu offers fish or vegetarian dishes but no meat. It is open every evening from 7.30–11.30 and parking is easy as it has its own large car park at the back.
- **F** The Star is a small Indian restaurant in the town centre. They won't take large groups and it's worth booking a table as it's very popular. It's ideal for a relaxed evening meal. There's no car park. It's open all day every day except Tuesdays.
- H Bertie's Kitchen is a large restaurant just outside the town which has a wonderful selection of home-cooked dishes on the menu. It's open every evening. There's no need to book during the week as there's plenty of room but at weekends it gets busy. There's a large car park.

#### Grammer focus task

Complete these sentence	s from	the exam	task	with 1	who,	which,	where	or	whose.
-------------------------	--------	----------	------	--------	------	--------	-------	----	--------

- 1 They want to go to a restaurant . which. they can drive to.
- 2 They need a restaurant .....serves a range of dishes to suit everyone.
- 3 Martin's is very popular with people ...... work in the local offices.
- 4 It serves pizza and pasta ..... the family make themselves.
- 5 There is a terrace ..... overlooks the river.
- 6 The Taj Mahal is an excellent Indian restaurant ..... is about 2 km from the town centre.
- 7 The Rainbow has a very nice terrace ...... you can sit.
- 8 It serves salads and sandwiches ...... are all specially made to order.
- 9 It's the only restaurant ..... windows look over a lake.

In which sentences can you put that?

In which sentence can you put nothing in the gap?

## So/such; too/enough

oo/such (+ that); enough and too (+ to infinitive and for)

## A Context listening

Holly and Max are sister and brother. They are getting ready to go out. Where are they going and what is Max's problem?



- Listen and check if you were right.
  What does Holly think Max should do?
- Listen again and complete the sentences below about Holly and Max.
  - 1 He says his blue shirt isn't smart \_\_\_\_\_ crough \_\_\_\_.
  - 2 It's ..... small for me.
  - 3 She tells Max not to be ...... silly.
  - 4 He says Holly loses weight ..... easily.
  - 5 She says Max is ..... a lazy person.

  - 7 She says he has ...... much ice cream and ..... many burgers.
  - 8 She says he doesn't eat ..... fruit.
- Look at your answers to A3.
  - 1 Write the words which follow so: Silly
  - 2 Write the three words which follow such:
  - 3 Write the word which follows enough:
  - 4 Write the words in sentences 1 and 6 which go before enough:
  - 5 Write the words which follow too:

## B Brammar

#### So and such

So and such make the words that follow stronger:

so + adjective or adverb	such + (a) + (adjective) + noun
You're so lazy. (adjective) You're so lucky. (adjective) You lose weight so easily. (adverb)	You're such a lazy person. (countable noun) You say such unkind things. (plural countable noun) You talk such nonsense. (uncountable noun)
so + many/few + (adj) + countable noun:	such + a lot of + countable or + uncountable noun
You make so many excuses. I've got so few nice clothes	You make such a lot of excuses.
so + much/little + (adj) + uncountable noun	
They cost so much money. I have so little time	They cost such a lot of money.



#### So and such + (that) ...

We use so and such + (that) to say why something happens.

Action/event etc.	so/such	+ (that) result
I'm = I can't think abo	so busy ut keeping fit because I'm	(that) I can't think about keeping fu m extremely busy.
	so slowly because he walked extrem	
It was = We couldn't find		(that) we couldn't find our books office was extremely untidy.
	such a shock w what to say because th	(that) they didn't know what to say, the news was a big shock.
	so many sweets use he ate a lot of sweets	
	so much weight new clothes because he'	(that) he had to buy new clothes. d lost a lot of weight.



#### **Enough and too**

Enough means the right quantity. Too means more than enough.



#### Enough goes:

• before a noun:

We've got enough sandwiches.



before many/much + noun:

We've got too many sandwiches.





We haven't got enough sandwiches. We've got too much food.





after an adjective/adverb:

This room is warm enough.

• before an adjective/adverb:

This room is too warm.





This room isn't warm enough. This room is too cold.





Am I speaking loudly enough?

Am I speaking too loudly?







#### enough and too + to infinitive or for

If we want to add information we use:

• enough/too + to infinitive.

It's too far to walk.

It's not near enough to walk.

Have you got enough work to do?

He wasn't running quickly enough to catch us.

• enough/too + for something/someone.

This shirt is too small for me.

I don't have enough money for gym membership.



#### C Grammar exercises

C1	Fill	in	the	gaps	with	so	or	such.

- 1 Everyone likes her because she's \_\_\_\_\_ funny.
- 2 That was ...... an unkind thing to say.
- 3 He has ..... few good friends.
- 4 Our team lost because they played ...... badly.
- 5 My brother's ...... handsome all my friends want to meet him.
- 6 We had ..... fun at the seaside.
- 7 I saw ...... many wonderful places when I was on holiday.
- 8 It was ...... a lovely surprise to see my cousin at the meeting.
- 9 I'm sorry I have ...... little time for sightseeing on my business trips.
- 10 It's ...... a pity you can't come with us to the theatre.



Fill in each gap in this email with one of the phrases a-g.

- a they had no time for a break
- b I got there in ten minutes
- c they were selling very quickly
- d I could hardly get in the door
- e I had to come home in a taxi
- f everyone wants them
- g nobody believes him



Hi Suzi

How are you?

Love

Frances

C	Complete brackets.	the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use the word in
	1 This c	offee is very sweet. I can't drink it.
		offee is too sweet. (too)
		n't put all your clothes in your leather suitcase.
		eather suitcase (enough)
		at a lot of work to do. I can't finish it all.
	_	t
		eather's cold and this jacket is too light.
		icket (enough)
		on't need any more CDs.
		got (enough)
		ould eat more slowly.
		t (too)
		to have my hair cut.
		ir (too)
		got lots of extra glasses, we don't need them all.
		got
		play games on my computer because it has very little memory.
		play games on my computer because it (enough)
		t up late so she missed the bus.
		issed the bus because she (enough)
C.		conversation and underline the correct word, to or for.
		This is your bedroom. I hope it's big enough 1 to/for you and this cupboard is for clothes. Is there enough room 2 to/for all your things?  Yes, I think so.
		We can put your big suitcase in the basement if it's too big 3 to/for go on top
	Imituitaty,	of the cupboard.
	Student:	Thank you.
	Landlady:	The bathroom is next door. Switch the water heater on in the morning so there's enough hot water 4 to/for have a shower. Can you understand everything? Do I speak slowly enough 5 to/for you?
	Student:	Yes, I can understand you. But my English isn't good enough 6 to/for say everything I want to.
	Landlady:	Oh, don't worry, I'm sure you'll soon learn.

### D Evan growther

#### **Writing Part 1**

Here are some sentences about a motorbike.

For each question, complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

Use no more than three words.

#### Example:

1 was given a motorbike by my uncle.

My uncle \_\_\_\_ me a motorbike.

This task tests
grammar from the
rest of the book
as well as the
grammar in
this unit.

1	It was	such	a surprise	I didn't	know	what	to	say.
---	--------	------	------------	----------	------	------	----	------

I was so ...... I didn't know what to say.

2 I have such a lot of friends who would like a motorbike.

I have so ...... friends who would like a motorbike.

3 My father said I was too young to ride it.

My father said I wasn't ..... to ride it.

4 I told him not to worry.

I said to him: '..... worry.'

5 If he won't let me ride it, I'll be angry.

Unless he \_\_\_\_\_ me ride it, I'll be angry.

#### Grammar focus task

Look at the sentences below. Write similar sentences with the same meaning. Use sentences 1, 2 and 3 above to help you.

- 1 I had such a shock I didn't know what to say.
- 2 I have such a lot of money I don't know what to spend it on.
- 3 My father said I was too small to be a firefighter.

## Linking words 1

because (of), as and since; so and therefore; to and in order to

# 20)

#### A Dentruit Introduc

Nancy is talking to Steve about a TV programme she watched last night. Before you listen, look at the pictures and try to put them in the correct order to tell the story of the programme.









Listen and check if you were right.
What happened to Orville?

- Listen again and complete the sentences below.
  - 1 Claudia went to an evening class \_\_\_\_\_\_learn Greek.
  - 2 He put on a false beard ......... he didn't want her to recognise him.
  - 3 Damian was there ...... he was waiting for his brother.
  - 4 Claudia knew Damian ...... her job.
  - 5 Orville was making a terrible noise ....... the college receptionist called the police.
  - 6 No-one helped him ...... he was taken to the police station.
- Look again at A3. Do all the sentences below mean the same as the ones in A3? Tick the ones that mean the same.
  - 1 Claudia wanted to learn Greek so she went to an evening class. ✓
  - 2 Orville put on a false beard because he didn't want Claudia to recognise him.
  - 3 Damian was waiting in the entrance hall to meet his brother.
  - 4 Claudia knew Damian because she'd met him when she was working.
  - 5 Orville was making a terrible noise because the college receptionist called the police.
  - 6 Orville was taken to the police station because no-one helped him.

#### 8: Illiamina

Linking words connect different ideas.

#### Because (of), as and since

We say because (of), as or since when we give a reason for something. Because is more common than as and since.

action	linking word	reason
She said nothing	because as since	she didn't recognise him

We use because of when the reason is a noun, not a sentence:

Claudia knew Damian because of her job.

Me did. trengalse he, because of tre he of not because of the was treating a moster of

⚠ When we answer a question beginning Why ..., we use Because (not as or since). Why was he there? Because he was waiting for his brother. (not As/since he was waiting for his brother.)

#### So and therefore

We say so and therefore when we give the result of something. So is usually in the middle of a sentence.

Therefore is at the beginning of a new sentence and is mainly used in writing.

action	linking word	result
Orville was making a terrible noise	SO	the receptionist called the police.
Orville was making a terrible noise.	Therefore	the receptionist called the police.

Compare the meaning of these sentences:

He didn't believe her so he followed her.

= He followed her as/since/because he didn't helieve her.

The teachers were on strike. Therefore the school was closed.

= The school was closed as since because the traches core of strik

#### To and in order to

We say to or in order to when we explain why we do something (our purpose). (In order) to is always followed by the infinitive.

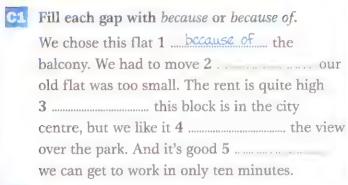
action	linking word	purpose
She was going to an evening class	to	learn Greek.
He followed her	in order to	see where she went

(In order) to can answer a question beginning with Why ...?

Why die he follow her 'To see where she not

-- 🚅

#### Grammar exercises





#### Match the beginnings and endings of these sentences.

- 2 I bought a new umbrella as .....
- 3 I gave my friend a present because .....
- 5 I got home very late because of ......
- 6 I was listening to music so .....

- a a traffic jam.
- b I didn't hear my phone.
- c I couldn't contact her.
- e I'd lost my old one.
  - f it was her birthday.

#### Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

- 1 Peter missed his station because he fell asleep on the train. Peter fell asleep on the train 50 he missed his station.
- 2 Hannah goes to lots of concerts because she likes music. Hannah likes music
- 3 Thieves steal from parked cars. Therefore it is important to lock your vehicle.
- 4 Parissa was feeling sick so she didn't eat her ice cream. Parissa didn't eat her ice cream
- 5 Sam got a job because he needed money. Sam needed money ......
- 6 Theresa enjoyed sport so she joined the tennis club. Theresa joined the tennis club
- 7 Sheila went for a walk as she had a headache. Sheila had a headache
- 8 Philip opened the parcel since he believed it was for him. Philip believed the parcel was for him

Ca Co	omplete each sentence with the to infinitive of a verb from the box.				
	We phoned the cinema the time of the film.	1 1 1			
2		check lose make mend			
3		tour use			
4 5					
_	Did you come here my computer?				
<b>U</b> r	nderline the correct words in this email.				
98	0	0			
When three printed to leave 10 the	e me a ticket. I put in my purse without looking at it and ran into the airport. we came out, I went to the kiosk 7 to I because of pay. The car park man said I hundred pounds 8 solbecause the car had been there for two weeks! The ticket d the wrong date. He didn't believe there was anything wrong with the ticket 9 silve the car and come home on the bus. I don't know what I'm going to tell my fatherefore/as I borrowed the car without asking him. What am I going to do??? — L	machine had nce/so we had ner isa			
	r each pair, mark S for sentences which mean the same and D for the fferent meanings.	ne ones with			
1	I've bought a computer as I work at home.				
	I've bought a computer since I work at home.				
2	I chose it because of the low price.				
	I chose it as it was cheap				
3 A friend helped me to set up my email as I don't know much about it.					
	A friend helped me to set up my email. Therefore I don't know much	about it			
4	I'm working at home in order to save money on train fares.				
	I'm working at home to save money on train fares.				
5	I've sold my car because I don't drive to work.				
	I've sold my car so I don't drive to work				
6	I wear old clothes since I stay at home all day.				

Re If i

I stay at home all day as I wear old clothes. .....

#### D Exam practice

#### **Reading Part 3**

Look at the sentences about a football club called Wickton City. Read the text to decide if each sentence is correct or incorrect. If it is correct, mark **A**. If it is incorrect, mark **B**.

- 1 Tony's dream was to be a football coach.
- 2 Tony is doing his second job since going back to Wickton.
- 3 One part of Tony's job takes up the most time.
- 4 A few teenagers on the 'Football Skills' courses are offered jobs with Wickton City.
- 5 Equipment on the courses is provided free for everyone.
- 6 The aim of the Saturday club is for young people to practise playing matches.
- 7 The number of different football teams for young people in Wickton has increased recently.
- 8 In the past young people in Wickton were fans of teams from outside the area.
- 9 Tony thinks the club may have to close in the future.
- 10 The fact that most of the Wickton City players are from the area is positive.

# Wickton City Football Club

Tony Connor has been Wickton City's youth officer for 18 months. At the age of 16 he went from Wickton to Ipswich Town to train to be a professional footballer. This had always been his ambition but he had to return home because he was injured and that's where he's stayed. He was then a football coach for over 7 years. Now, as youth officer, he has three parts to his job - to run the mini-soccer centre on a Saturday morning, to teach football to local teenagers, and to help look after the football club's Academy for players who are training in order to play in the first team. He says 'Everything I do is important but I spend longer teaching local teenagers than I do on the other parts of the job.'

He wants teenagers to get football qualifications, therefore he's developed a programme to help them. 'These 'Football Skills' courses are for young people who have no qualifications. We obviously can't give them jobs at the end but, by doing our courses, I hope they'll find a job in the future and a few of them might actually work for a football club. There's no charge for most of the courses we run. We usually charge a small fee for the equipment but we sometimes provide that free as well.'

On Saturday mornings, the mini-soccer centre offers opportunities for local children at the club. 'There are no competitions. They don't win or lose. They come in order to have a chance to train at the football club.'

In addition, for the first time in the club's history, there are now three children's teams. 'Since last year, we've got under-twelves, under-fourteens, under-sixteens, and also the Academy teams, which contain the best players in the town.'

As well as forming football stars of the future, the club is also trying to encourage younger fans. 'We hope to attract more of the young kids here, to make them feel part of the club, in order to save them travelling miles to Manchester United or Liverpool every week.'

Tony says the club went through a bad period. 'A few years ago we nearly lost our team altogether as the club had very little money so we're making sure that doesn't happen again. For about fifteen years, the club couldn't get well-known players since the money wasn't available. Therefore a lot of local players have played in the first team over the last two years and that's helped the level of football in the area. So that's a good thing.'

#### Grammar focus task

Answer these questions about the text. Begin your answers with because, (in order) to or so (that). Look back at the text if you need to.

- 2 Why did he return home?
- 3 Why do players train at the Academy?
- 4 Why has Tony developed a programme for teenagers?
- 5 Why do children come to the mini-soccer centre?
- 6 Why does the club want to attract more young fans?
- 7 Why did the club nearly lose its team? .....
- 8 Why couldn't the club get well-known players in the first team? ......

# A Context listening

Selina has phoned Mr Smart to ask him about his holiday. Look at this brochure and the photo Mr Smart took. What was Mr Smart's problem?





- Listen and check if you were right.

  Which hotel did Mr Smart and his wife prefer?
- Listen again and complete the sentences below.
  - 1 I enjoyed most of the holiday, ...... I didn't enjoy the first night.
  - 2 ...... I asked for a quiet hotel, your company put me in the Concordia.
  - 3 My wife and I ...... work very hard.
  - 4 Unfortunately ...... his assistant were out.
  - 5 ...... I left several messages, he didn't phone me back until the second day.
  - 6 ..... the bad start, we had a good holiday.
  - 7 I'm going to tell our bookings manager about your problems ... . . . . . . she comes into the office.
  - 8 Will you phone me ...... you find out what went wrong?
  - 9 I'll ...... phone ... email you.
- Look at your answers to A3 and mark these sentences T for True or F for False.
  - 1 In sentences 1, 2 and 5 but and although are used when the same idea is repeated.
  - 2 In sentences 3 and 4 both is used before a noun and before a verb.
  - 3 In sentence 6 in spite of is used before a noun.
  - 4 In sentences 7 and 8 the will-future tense is used after as soon as and when. ..........
  - 5 In sentence 9 either and or are used before verbs.

#### B Grammar

Linking words connect different ideas.

## But, although and though

But and although (or though) contrast two ideas and are followed by noun + verb:

idea A	linking word	idea B
The hotel was excellent	but although though	the food was boring.
linking word	idea B	idea A
Although/though	the food was boring,	the hotel was excellent

▲ We can't use although (or though) and but in the same sentence:

not Antimorph the fount our horring.

Although (or though) is stronger than but.

But is always in the middle of a sentence. Although (or though) is sometimes at the beginning of a sentence and sometimes in the middle.



## 12 In spite of / despite

In spite of / despite + noun contrasts two ideas.

idea A	linking word	idea B
The hotel was excellent	in spite of/despite	the boring food
linking word	idea B	idea A
In spite of/despite	the boring food,	the hotel was excellent.

A We can't use noun + verb after in spite of / despite: not The hotel was excellent in spite of the land was hotely

## 🔟 Both ... and, ... and ... both, either .... or

We use both ... and and either ... or to connect two people or things:

Both my wife and I work very hard.

Either the bookings manager or her secretary made a mistake.

We often use noun and noun + both + verb:

Mr Smart and Mrs Smart both work very hard.

We often use either ... or to connect two verbs: Either phone me or send me an email. You can either eat out or have dinner in your hotel. ▲ Both goes after the verb to be and auxiliary verbs:
My wife and I were both looking forward to a rest.



### When, until, before, after, as soon as, while

We use when, until, before, after, as soon as and while to connect two actions in time: When we arrived in Florida, we hired a car.

We waited with our friends until their bus arrived.

⚠ When we talk about the future, we use a present tense after these words: We'll hire a car, when we arrive in Florida. (not will arrive)



<b>C1</b>	Re	write these sentences using although/though.
	1	I don't often eat ice cream but I really like it.
		Although I really like ice cream, I don't often eat it.
	2	Elena speaks Polish but she's never been to Poland.
		though
	3	Zach didn't want to go to the disco but he enjoyed it when he got there.
		Although
	4	No-one eats fruit but Mum still buys it.
		though
	5	Dennis didn't get good marks in his exams but he went to university.
		Though
	6	Mahmoud is the shop manager but he's only nineteen.
		although
	Ma	ake each pair of sentences into one sentence using the words in brackets.
		I travelled to New York. There was a strike. (in spite of)
		I travelled to New York in spite of the strike.
	2	Nigel bought some CDs. Anthony bought some CDs. (both and)
		But Naci and Anthony teacht and the or the and Anthony of the aget some the
	3	Tom sent that email. Martin sent that email. (either or)
	4	Dolores was working in the garden. The sun was hot. (despite)
	5	Her dress is new. Her jacket is new. (and both)
	6	Michael wasn't late. There was a traffic jam. (in spite of)
	7	My father gave me some money. My mother gave me some money. (and both)
	8	Do your homework now. Get up early and do it tomorrow. (either or)
	9	You can go on your bike. You can come with me in the car. (either or)



#### Greta is talking about leaving school. Underline the correct words.

Although we enjoyed school sometimes, because we were with our friends, we were happy 1 when/while we left. We all walked out of the gate together 2 after/before we took the final exam. We wanted to go on holiday 3 while / as soon as the school term finished, but we had to wait 4 after/until we had our marks.



I got a job 5 while/before I waited to get my exam results. I needed to earn some money 6 before/when I went away.

We all phoned our friends 7 until/when the results arrived. Everyone had passed! I was so happy 8 after/when I knew that. We could all enjoy our holiday.



Read this email and put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or will future.



#### Hi Andreas

I'm going to fly to Argentina as soon as I my holiday 2 ...... ..... (begin). My uncle will meet me when I 3 ...... (arrive) and take me to his house. I expect I 4 ............. (stay) with his family for about a month. My cousins will show me around the city before we going to fly to Ecuador, I 7 ...... (tour) around until my money 8 ...... (run) out. I don't have fixed plans, but I'm definitely going to take a river trip while ! 9 ..... (be) in Ecuador. I'm really excited. What about you? What are you going to do after your exams 10 ..... (be) over? All the best Euan



## There are mistakes in five of these sentences. Find them and correct them.

- 1 Athough the Importance of the pegar area frequency at the action of the complete greek
- 2 Both university students and school feachers can use this library.
- 3 We had a good time at the beach in spite of the weather was windy.
- 4 Maggie isn't really friendly though she is very polite.
- 5 We'll leave the restaurant as soon as the waiter will bring our bill.
- 6 This room is terribly untidy! Or help me to tidy it or go away.
- 7 In spite of our hard work, we dian't win the prize.
- 8 I don't play an instrument although my father and my mother both are musicians.
- 9 We're going to change our car before we start our tour of Scandinavia.

#### D Exam practice

#### **Reading Part 1**

Look at the text in each question.

What does it say?

Mark the letter next to the correct explanation - A, B or C.

.

James

Sally can't get tickets for the film tonight. Can you go either tomorrow afternoon or evening? Ring her as soon as you get home or by 5 at the latest.

- A James should tell Sally before 5 today whether he can go to the cinema tomorrow.
- **B** James should try to buy the cinema tickets as Sally can't get them.
- **C** James should phone Sally before 5 tomorrow about going to the cinema.

2

3

This shop is closed while owner is away. Take all enquiries to bookshop across the road.

- A This shop has closed and is moving opposite.
- **B** This shop has a new owner who lives opposite.
- C If you need something, go to the shop opposite.

Hi Annie

Although I'd like to lend you my camera for your holiday, I won't be able to because I've promised to take photos at Peter's wedding.

Sorry. Love Ruth

#### Ruth is apologising for

- A not lending Annie her camera because she needs it herself.
- **B** promising to lend Annie her camera and then changing her mind.
- C not being able to take photos at Peter's wedding.

- A Put your name here before Friday if you want to join a trip.
- **B** You can go to either London or Stratford on Friday if you put your name here.
- **C** The people whose names appear below are going to either London or Stratford on Wednesday.

En

Ca En

Ca

Ca

(d

Cal

- Dear Julia. I'm enjoying
  myself in spite of the
  noisy road outside the
  hotel You said it was
  ...

  Everything else is pertect
   exactly as you said
  Carmen
- A Carmen is pleased that the road is not as noisy as she had expected.
- **B** Everything about the hotel is as Julia described it except the traffic outside.
- **C** Carmen is sorry she took Julia's advice when choosing her hotel.

#### Grammar Incus task

Correct these signs and messages. Look at the task above to help you.

Ring Tomas as soon as you will get home

2

This CLINIC IS closed while DOCTOR WILL BE ON HOLIDAY.

3

Although I'd like to come out with you, but I won't be able to because I'm babysitting.

4

Hotel guests can either eat in the dining-room and beside the pool.

5

I enjoyed the film in spite of the actors were very bad.

# Recording scripts

Record	ing 1	Mum	Oh, hello Josh. Are you at the station?  No. I'm outside my office but I'm getting on my
Emily: Callum:	Come on Callum. Let's try this shop now. Oh, not another clothes shop. I'm tired.	Josh:	bike now to cycle there. The boss said I could
Emily:	But I still need to find something to wear for		leave at lunchtime so I can catch the 1.30 train.
Elimy:	my birthday party. I'm really excited about it.	Mum:	That was nice of him.
	You are coming, aren't you?	Josh:	Yeah. He's a good boss. He treats us well.
Callum:	Yes, of course But can't we have a rest?	Mum:	Well, hurry now so you don't miss the train.
Carain.	Shopping's so tiring. And clothes shops are	* 1	It's already one o'clock.
	always boring and crowded, especially on	Josh:	Don't worry. I cycle very quickly and it's not
	Saturdays.	Marin	far anyway. I know a quick route.
Emily:	I suppose you're not really interested in	Mum:	Oh, but ride carefully, won't you? Of course I will.
,	clothes. That's why you're tired.	Josh: Mum:	You won't be late today, will you Josh?
Callum:	And bored.	Josh:	No. I know I'm usually late for everything but I
Emily:	Well, do you want to get anything in town today?	JUS11.	won't be late today.
Callum:	I'd like to go to the computer shop over there.	Mum:	OK. I don't want you to spoil the surprise for
	Now that shop is interesting.	Iva calli.	Sophie. Everyone's coming here by six o'clock.
Emily:	But you don't need a new computer.	Josh:	Yes I know. You've arranged everything
Callum:	No, but there's a new computer game I want.	, 0212	perfectly Mum and I'll be there.
	It's really exciting. I played it at Jack's last week.	Mum:	Good.
Emily:	Look, I promise we'll go to the computer shop	Josh:	You know I don't want to miss my little sister's
	afterwards. Come on please. I want to look		16th birthday.
	good at the party and I haven't got anything	Mum:	Yeah, I know. Sorry.
C 11	yet. I want you to help me.	Josh.	I need to go now or I will miss the train.
Callum:	Oh, all right then.	Mum:	Of course. Bye then. See you later.
Callum:	Where shall we go now then?	Josh:	Bye.
Emily:	Well, last week I saw a lovely short black wool	2	
*	skirt, with a black and white belt, in that new	Josh:	Hello?
	shop that's just opened. I tried it on but I	Sophie:	Hi Josh. It's Sophie.
	wasn't sure. It was quite expensive.	Josh:	Hi. How are you? Happy birthday by the way.
Callum:	Well, your mum gave you some money. So why	Sophie:	Oh thanks.
	don't we go and see if they still have it? You	Josh:	What's the matter? You sound miserable.
	can try it on again.	Sophie:	Why can't you come home Josh? It's going to
Emily:	I hope it's still there. I did like it. And the		be extremely boring with just me and mum
	material felt really soft. I can wear my favourite		and dad. And I never see you.
	long black boots with it. I bought them a long	Josh.	I know. I'm sorry. I've got a new boss. We have
	time ago but they're comfortable and they'll		to work very hard and I can't have time off this
0.11	look good with the skirt. And I can wear		week.
Callum:	Come on, then. Oh just a minute. Can we go in	Sophie.	That's so unfair.
	this shop first? Look at those white leather trainers. They're really cool. They're just what	Josh:	But I posted your present on Wednesday. I
	I want, and they're in the sale.		wrapped it really well so I hope it didn't get
Emily:	I thought you were tired		broken. Do you like it?
		Sophie:	I don't know. It hasn't come.
Reces	ting 2	Josh:	And I sent you a card as well.
1		Sophie:	What's that noise? It sounds like a train.
Mum:	Hello.	Josh:	Oh that, It's a motorbike outside. It's rather
Josh:	Hi, Mum.	Sanhia	noisy here. Where are you then?
-		Sophie:	where are you men:

Josh: Err ... I'm in a café. I often come here on Friday lunchtimes. I'll ring you later. Sophie? Oh you've gone.

3

Dad: Josh? Where are you?

Josh: I'm still at the station. I've just arrived. It was a fast train so it got in at 5.30.

Dad: Well I can't come to the station now because

people are arriving.

Josh: OK. I'll get a taxi then.

Dad: Good. They always stop round the corner. So hurry and try to get near the front of the queue. I hope it doesn't take you too long to get here. The traffic's moving very slowly outside our house.

Josh: It'll be OK Dad. Where's Sophie?

Dad: She's waiting patiently at her friend's house I hope. You know. Er Natasha. She often goes there after school. We told her we had a surprise for her but she doesn't know it's a party. She'll be really pleased to see you.

Josh: Yeah. I'm glad I could come. See you soon then.

Dad: Bye.

Peter: And finally, with new music magazine Smash

launching this month, we thought we'd look at how it compares with some of the other music magazines which are on sale. Here to tell us all about them is Jessie Crawford.

Jessie: Thank you Peter. I've got three magazines in front of me - Hits!, Buzz and Smash. Hits! and Buzz have both been around for a while and

they're very popular.

Peter: Hits! seems more colourful than Buzz. Does it

sell more copies?

Jessie: No, Buzz is as popular as Hits! – probably because of its free posters. Hits! doesn't usually have any posters or other extras. That's why it's less expensive than Buzz. And it's smaller than Buzz too. I think people like it because you can read it more easily. They're very similar

magazines really.

Peter: So which one do you prefer?

Jessie: In my opinion Buzz isn't as good as Hits!

Peter: And what about this magazine - Smash?

Jessie: Smash is the newest - as you said, this is its first month - and they're advertising it as the

country's best music guide.

Peter: Really?

Jessie: Yeah. It's got the most reviews and contains

the most information.

Peter: And do the journalists write well? That's sometimes a problem with these kinds of magazines.

Jessie: Yes, in fact they write much better than some

of the journalists on the national newspapers. So if you want something interesting to read,

D.

M

D<sub>1</sub>

11

[]

Mi

W

100

M

Dec

buy Smash.

Jessie: Yes, I think so.

Peter:

Peter: What about price Jessie? How much is Smash?

Jessie: It's £2.50. Hits! is the cheapest at £1.50.

Peter: And Buzz is the most expensive?

Jessie: That's right. It costs £3.20.

Peter: And does Smash have any disadvantages?

Jessie: It has a lot of adverts - all three of them do -

but Hits! has the most adverts.

Peter: Let's see what our listeners think. Do you agree

with Jessie? Do write in and tell us - send us an email or go to our website and leave us a

message - that's www.musicplace ...

#### Recording 4

Welcome everybody to this Cititours Bus. I hope you're having a good time here in the West of England? I'm Anna and I'm your guide today here in Durrington. Our tours usually last about one hour but this week they're taking a little longer because some roads are closed in the centre of town. I'm here to tell you about some of the most interesting sights in Durrington. Has everyone got a map and can you all hear me? Good, I've got a sore throat and I can't shout.

The bus is now turning into Queens Road. From this road we can see a very modern building. This is the town's new sports stadium. All the big matches happen there but at the moment, an international company is using it for a conference, I think.

OK, so, please look to your left. We're now passing the City Theatre. This building is one hundred years old. It's very pretty, as you see, but it doesn't have enough seats for big shows. We've got a new entertainment centre in Victoria Park. We don't pass it on the bus, but you may be interested to know it's got a cinema and a concert hall. Most people prefer it because it's got air-conditioning but I still enjoy an evening at the old theatre. The theatre's got a very good café if you want somewhere to have lunch. Now, on your right, is the High Street. This takes you to the Market Place. This Cititour bus normally goes along the High Street into the Market Place. But, um, at the moment some musicians are practising for an outdoor concert there. So we're driving round a slightly different route because the roads into the Market Place are closed. The market was an important local trade centre until about 1970. Farmers bought and sold their cows and sheep there. However, we don't see animals in the city centre these days. The market area's got some good shops round it now. I go there most weekends. Why don't you have a walk round there later on, and then you can have lunch in one of the cafés?

Recen	ling 5	Leah:	Hi James, happy birthday. I've brought a pizza. I made it this morning.
Donny:	Hi.	James.	Oh, thanks Leah. You make the best pizza I've
Mum:	Hello Donny, where are you?	Januar 3.	ever eaten. Come in, both of you. Have you
Donny:	Oh, hi Mum. I'm on the bus.		met my sister Annie? Annie, this is Leah and
Mum:	But it's nearly eleven o'clock.		Garry.
Donny:	I'll be home in half an hour. I've got something	Leah.	Hello Annie. It's nice to meet you.
	to tell you.	Annie.	Hello, Leah. Hello Garry. What are you doing
Mum:	Well, I've phoned you three times this evening.	. 1111111,	here?
	You went out and I didn't know where you	Leah:	Oh, have you two already met?
	were. You didn't say goodbye.	Garry.	Er, yeah, actually, we have.
Donny:	Oh, sorry. You were having a shower when I	Leah	Oh, really? When did you meet then?
	went out. I wanted to see the new film at the	Garry:	Um I've seen Annie at the cinema.
	Arts Cinema and I was late.	Annie.	Yes, I've got an evening job there. I've worked
Mum:	Well, you didn't say anything to me. I phoned		there for two months. But, Garry
	you at eight o'clock. Your phone was on but	Garry'	Yes, um, well, happy birthday, James.
	you didn't answer.	Leah.	Yes, happy birthday.
Donny:	Oh, yeah. Sorry.		,,
Mum:	So? Why didn't you answer?	Leah	Garry, how long have you known Annie?
Donny:	I didn't answer my phone because I was	Garry.	Leah, really, that's the second time you've
	listening to an argument. You see, I was having		asked me. I met Annie last week at the cinema
	a coffee in the cinema café while I was waiting	Leah.	I don't believe you. She's worked there since
	for the film to begin. I was sitting near the		April.
	ticket desk and the manager was shouting at a	Garry:	So?
	woman. She was one of the ticket sellers. Then	I eah	You haven't taken me to that cinema for weeks
	she ran out of the cinema. She was almost		And you're always busy. Now I'm beginning to
	crying. It was quite exciting.		understand.
Mum:	I see. Well, I texted you at nine o'clock. Your phone wasn't on.	Garty <sup>,</sup>	But, Leah
Donny:	No, at nine o'clock I was watching the film. Of	Garry.	Annie, where were you last weekend? I waited
	course my phone wasn't on.		in the cinema for you on Saturday. I was there
Mum:	And I tried to contact you again at ten o'clock.		for an hour.
	You didn't answer again.	Annie	I didn't work last weekend.
Donny:	I was talking to the manager when you rang me.	Garry:	Oh, I didn't know.
Mum:	What about?	Annie <sup>,</sup>	And I didn't know about your girlfriend. But
Donny:	Well, I was leaving the cinema when I saw a		I've just met her!
	notice about the ticket seller's job. I went to	Garry:	Look, I explained last week. She's just a friend,
	the manager's office and I applied for it.		not a girlfriend.
Mum:	And?	Annie <sup>.</sup>	She doesn't think so.
Donny:	He offered me the job! Three nights a week.  And cheap tickets.	Garry.	Just let me explain. Come outside for a minute
Mum:	Oh. We'll talk about that later. You have	James.	Annie, I need some help in the kitchen. Leah,
	homework every night.		have you seen Annie?
Donny:	Oh, but Mum	Leah.	She's gone out.
Mum:	See you in half an hour. Bye.	James:	What? When?
Donny:	OK. Bye.	Leah:	She left an hour ago with Garry.
	9	James:	Oh, no! But this is my birthday. And she
Recon			promised to help.
Annie:	James, answer the door. Our first guests have arrived!	Leah	I'll help you if you want. It's better than sitting here feeling miserable.
James:	Oh, Annie, no, I'm not ready. I haven't put all		
	the balloons up yet.		
Annie:	Well, I still haven't dried my hair.		
lames:	OK, OK, I'll get the door.		

James:

OK, OK, I'll get the door.

#### Recording 7

Dan: Hi. I'm Dan Savery and this week in our series 'Going Back' I'm talking to Peter, a young engineer who has lived in Britain for - is it

seven years?

Peter: Yes, seven.

Dan: Seven years. And where did you go last week,

Peter?

Peter: Well, last week I visited my home city.

Dan: This was your first visit in seven years?

Peter: That's right. And it had changed a lot. I also

wanted to see my friend Stefan from high school.

I'm sure it was great to see him and look round.

Dan: I'm sure it was great to see him and look round.

Peter: Oh, yeah. When I arrived, Stefan had finished his work for the day but he hadn't had lunch, so we went to a café. It was in a smart new building. When we'd eaten lunch, we walked

by the river.

Dan: Nice?

Peter: Yeah, the riverside used to be the factory area, but now there are gardens and a fantastic new sports centre.

Dan: That sounds great.

Peter: Definitely. There didn't use to be a sports

centre in the city.

Dan: What else did you see?

Peter: We walked across an interesting modern road

bridge. The engineers had just started it the year I left. I used to watch them on my way home from school. I had already decided to become an engineer and I was excited because I'd never seen anything like it. But now it's

finished and it's so busy.

Dan: Did there use to be less traffic?

Peter: Yes. We used to see a lot of big lorries in the city, but most people didn't use to go to work by car,

so the roads weren't so busy. We used to get pollution from factories, now it comes from cars!

Dan: So, not so good, then?

Peter: No.

Dan: So, any other surprises?

Peter: Well, in the evening, we went for a meal in a

restaurant. That was the best surprise of the day.

Dan: Oh

Peter: I walked into the restaurant and I saw all my

old friends. Stefan had invited them to join us.

We had a brilliant evening.

#### 1

Are you tired of sitting on the beach? How about a holiday with some action? With Appleby Adventures you can go climbing in the Alps or the Andes. We're not suggesting sailing across the Atlantic Ocean but you can sail around the coast of Greece or on Lake Garda. Or you can watch the sun set over the Sahara Desert. And if you've only got a few days, go on one of our city breaks to Rome or New York. We have ten free holidays to give away. Just phone 0845 765298 for a brochure and you might be one of those ten lucky people. All you need is a passport. Don't forget the number 0845 765298.

loo

rea

No

esp

fac

hec

Th

and

sho

If t

mi

We

toc

bu

to ·

Yes

Th

car

qu

the

OK

ha

No

Hi

oh

N

[1]

- 1

Mi

101

he

0()

CO

WI

an

thi

01

re

lu.

bu

ap

ΓD

140

na

M

Ev

es

br

40

00

#### 2

Make sure you don't miss the Sandersons Sale. For this weekend only we've got some unbelievable prices – our women's jeans are just £6 a pair. And just in time for the summer, our shorts are on special offer. For men, Sandersons have the best selection of trousers you'll find anywhere in Oldcastle. If it's shoes you're looking for, people travel from all over the area to Sandersons and this weekend they're all half price. Yeah! So hurry before they're all gone. Sandersons, everyone's favourite store.

#### 3

You're listening to 555FM – the station which brings you more music. The music on 555FM is perfect for a Friday afternoon. We've got our road report after the news. Are you sitting in your car in the traffic? If you are, ring us and tell us what the traffic is like where you are. We bring you the latest information every hour. Next this evening it's the news and we've got the weather – yes, it's still raining! Then it's your chance to phone us and ask us a question about money. I haven't got any so it's not a problem for me. But I'm sure you have. Our expert, Mark Sherlock, is here to give you advice and answer your questions. So ring us on 0700 707007. The phone lines are open now. And it's now five o'clock so here's Tracey Scarlett with the news.

You will hear a tour guide talking to some tourists about the town of Medbury. For each question, fill in the missing information in the numbered space. You will hear the recording twice.

As you can see from the signs, this was Medbury's old cheese market. It's been a market since 1540. Country people used to bring cheese and butter and things here to sell but since 1970 we've had the supermarkets of course, and so this has been a craft market since 1982.

If you want to take presents home, there are plenty of things to choose from like these hand-painted T-shirts or those traditional baskets, but personally, I'd advise you to look first at the stall over there selling jewellery. You really won't find anything like it anywhere else.

Now this town was also well-known for its leather goods, especially shoes. That long building over there was the factory where they were made. It's become a museum

because most of the shoes we buy now are made abroad. There'll be time to go and look round it if you want to, and it's quite interesting, actually.

If you need to change some money before you go shopping, you'll find a bank over there beside the cinema. If that one's busy there's another one but it's a few minutes' walk - it's opposite the park.

We'll meet at 4.30. We're taking the coach back to London today as we want to visit somewhere else on the way back but if you come here again from London, the quickest way to get here is by train. The station is just down the road. You can just see the taxi rank outside.

There's a kiosk in the centre of the market here where you can get information about the town. Do go and ask some questions. If you want a map there's a newsagent over there and just behind the town hall is a very nice café. OK then. Have a good afternoon and I'll see you here at half past four,

Now listen again. (The recording is repeated.)

#### Recording 9

Hi, Mia. It's me, Tom. I'm on my way and I arrive at seven oh five. I don't need a taxi as I haven't got much luggage – I've only got a few small bags so I can walk from the station. I'll be there about twenty past seven. Shall I buy some food – there's a shop just outside the station. Let me know.

Mia. It's Giorgio. Where are you? I'm in the Central Café in town. I'm really surprised because there isn't anybody here. I was sure we all agreed to meet in the café before going to the cinema but there's nobody here. The café's completely empty. Where is everyone? Have I got the wrong day? I've already rung everybody and no-one's answered and now you're not in. Ring me back if you get this message.

Oh Mia hi. It's Chloe. You know I'm looking for a job. I really need some money urgently for our holiday. Well, I've just bought the paper because it has all the job ads today but I've found nothing. Well I haven't found anything I can apply for. So I wondered about the shop where you work. I'm a bit worried because I've got no experience but I do work hard. Do they need anyone? Will it matter that I haven't got any experience? Ring me back. Please!

Mia. This is Roseanne. It's about the picnic tomorrow.

Everything is organised. Lots of people are coming and everyone's bringing something. Can you bring some bread? Oh, and can you buy some crisps? We'll need several packets. Have I forgotten anything? Oh, I bought a couple of cakes. Because it's your birthday tomorrow and

mine on Tuesday, I got two cakes. There'll be a lot of people so I'm sure we'll eat them both. See you at 12 by the river. We'll find somewhere quiet. Talk to you later. Don't forget to ring me.

#### Recording 10

Presenter: And now we're going to talk to Kirsty who recently appeared on the TV programme 'New Rooms'

Kirsty: Yes, Hi.

Presenter: You're going to talk about your bedroom I believe. Can you tell us what happened?

Kirsty: Yes. Well, my mum wrote into the show and she asked them to do a makeover on my bedroom for my birthday. You know, they go to a different place every week and change someone's room.

Presenter: Sounds great.

Kirsty: Well, there were three people who came – two men and a woman – and each of them had a different job to do. They spent all week in my bedroom.

Presenter: Did they ask you what you wanted?

Kirsty: Yeah. They showed me some paint and we tried each colour on the wall. In the end I had to choose between blue and orange.

Presenter: So what did you choose?

Kirsty: Well, either colour was OK with me so they did two walls blue and two walls orange. But now they've finished, neither of the colours looks very nice.

Presenter: And what about the furniture?

Kirsty: I like my bed so I've kept that. They didn't really want me to have much furniture at all but I said I needed a desk and a chair and a TV. Well, all teenagers watch TV and most people have a TV in their room, don't they? In fact, every room in our house has a TV.

Presenter: So you've got a TV?

Kirsty: Yes and an armchair. It's red and it's really ugly. And I've got a fridge. I was a bit surprised. I didn't expect that.

Presenter: No bedrooms have fridges in them, do they? But I suppose you can keep drinks cold in the summer. Is there anything in the room you like?

Kirsty: There are two new lights and both of them are really nice but they've put some old-fashioned pictures on the wall. I like modern art and none of them are modern. I do like the one of a sunset, though. I had some posters on the wall before but most of them were very old. And they broke my mirror so they bought a new one. It's cool. It's got stars round it and

each star has a light in it.

Presenter: So that's good. Your bedroom sounds different

anyway but you don't really like it.

No, but most of my friends like it. Some of Kirsty: them want to copy it.

Presenter: So what do you think of designers?

I think they're all mad! I'm going to be a scientist. Kirstv:

Presenter: OK. Well good luck with that and bad luck with the room, Kirsty. Now our next guest is here to

tell us ...

#### Recording 11a

Have you seen 'Market Street' this week? I Boy: missed last night's programme. Did anything exciting happen?

It was about Cara. (Who?) You know. Cara is Girl: Sally's sister and they share a flat. Well, Sally went on holiday but she lent her key to their cousin Tony. He doesn't have his own flat and he wants to leave his parents' house because he isn't happy living with them.

Now who's Tony? Boy:

He's that good-looking one. You know, he works Girl: in the newsagent's. Do you remember he broke his leg a few months ago? Oh yeah. Carry on. The problem was that Sally forgot to tell Cara about the key. And she didn't know that Tony and Cara had had a big argument two weeks before and they were still angry with each other. So when Tony arrived at the flat, Cara was furious and refused to let him in. She was really rude to him because she was looking forward to being in the flat on her own.

So what did Tony do? Boy:

Well, later on when Cara was at work he used Girl: Sally's key and went into the flat. He was sitting there by himself when he had an idea.

Yes ... Boy:

Girl: He invited some friends of Cara's to the flat. So when Cara arrived home in the evening, there were lots of people there. They'd cooked a meal and they were all waiting for her.

So did she get angry again? Boy:

They were friends of hers so she couldn't. She Girl: came in and had some nice food. She really enjoyed herself. They all went home about midnight.

And what about Tony? Boy:

Girl: Oh, she let him stay. She decided he wasn't so bad after all. But I don't know what her boyfriend will think. He's been away but he's coming back soon.

Boy: He's that huge guy, isn't he? Could be

interesting.

#### Recording 11b

You will hear an interview with Helen who is a basketball player. For each question put a tick in the correct box. You will hear the recording twice.

Interviewer: Welcome to 'Sport People', the programme where we talk to people interested in different sports. Today we have in the studio Helen who plays basketball and lives in the United States with her twin sister. She's back in Britain for a holiday. Welcome Helen. Tell us, where are you living in the States?

In North Carolina. Our hobby was playing Helen: basketball and a friend of ours told us about colleges in the United States which train people in particular sports. We were both really excited at the idea so we applied and we got places because we're good at basketball.

Interviewer: So you went to the United States straight from school?

Helen: No, we had started at college in England. The lectures and everything were free there but we had to pay for our training which was really expensive. At the American college everything is free except for our accommodation. We don't pay for our courses and we get free basketball training. We actually have our own trainer.

Interviewer: And in return you play in their college team. And what about the rest of the team? What are they like?

Fine. We get on well. We're lucky we've never Helen: had to stop playing because of injuries. Quite a few in the team have had to stop playing because they hurt themselves. We aren't very tall in comparison to the rest of the team - in fact we're the smallest, but we're just as strong as them, maybe even stronger.

Interviewer: And what's it like being a sports student? Helen: Well, some people think because we're training and playing matches we don't have to study hard but that's not true. We study sports science and medicine as well as all the other subjects so we study harder in fact. And if we miss any of our classes we're not allowed to play in the team.

Е

K

Б

Interviewer: Oh, I nearly forgot to ask. When did you first start playing basketball?

We've been in the United States since last Helen: August and we'll be there for at least four years. But we started playing six years ago after watching our brother in matches. He still plays and he started playing more than ten years ago. His team isn't as good as ours of course!

Interviewer: And what about your free time?

Helen: Er, I spend most of my time studying and

training. I'm not really interested in shopping like most of my friends. My sister and I get quite tired so when we have free time we usually sit in our room by ourselves watching TV. We share a room and we look after each other as we are so far from home.

Now listen again. (The recording is repeated.)

#### Recording 12

Kelly: Hi Elliot. Elliot: Hi Kelly.

Kelly: What are you doing tonight?

Elliot: Well ...

Kelly: We've got tickets for a film. We're going to

see the new James Bond film. It starts at

nine o'clock.

Elliot: Oh, that would be great but I can't.

Kelly: But why? We've finished our exams.

Elliot: I'm not studying for exams tonight. You know

my company?

Kelly: No I don't know what you're talking about.

Elliot: I've started an internet company.

Kelly: You've what?

Elliot: I sell books and CDs online and there are articles

and things written by teenagers for teenagers.

Kelly: Wow.

Elliot: So you can sit at home, have fun and do your

shopping on the screen without leaving the house. All you need is a mouse and a keyboard.

Kelly: And a computer of course.

Elliot: Yeah, yeah. Everybody will do shopping by

computer in a few years' time.

Kelly: Oh, I'm sure you're right. But, anyway, what

about Saturday and Sunday? We're going to spend the weekend at the seaside. My brother's

going to drive us there.

Elliot: I'm flying to Rome tomorrow.

Kelly: No.

Elliot: I'm meeting a designer at 10.30 on Saturday.

Kelly: Well, come on Sunday then.

Elliot: My flight leaves Rome at 11 pm on Saturday and it arrives in London at 1 am. I won't get

much sleep on Saturday night so I expect I'll be asleep all day on Sunday. I'll probably feel

really tired.

Kelly: OK then. Don't worry about your friends. I'm

sure your company is more interesting.

Elliot: Don't be annoyed. Look, I've got half an hour free. Let's do something now. What about a

coffee?

Kelly: OK. I'll have a coffee with you.

Elliot: And I'll pay. Come on, Kelly. I'll be 17 next

week and I hope that in three years' time I'll be really rich, I'll have a fast car and I'll drive you all to the seaside or wherever you want ...

1

Alex: Excuse me. I've come for an interview. The

waiter's job. My name's Alex.

Maria: Oh yes. Mr Kent's expecting you. He's the boss.

I'm Maria.

Alex: Hi Maria. Can I sit here for a minute?

Maria: Yes of course you can. Have you come a long

way?

Alex: Not far but I walked quickly. May I get a drink

of water? I'm really thirsty.

Maria: Yes, of course. Over there look.

Alex. Could I use the phone? I just want to ring my

girlfriend.

Maria: I'm afraid not. We're not allowed to. Oh look,

here's Mr Kent.

2

Alex. Morning Maria.

Maria: Morning Alex. Are you looking forward to your

first day here? [Mm] I'm getting everything ready.

OV

Alex: OK.

Maria: Can you help me? Can you do those tables over

there? Knives, forks and glasses.

Alex: Of course I can.

Maria: When you've finished the tables, will you help

me put out today's menus?

Alex: Yes I will.

Maria: And would you check the salt and pepper?

Each table has one of each.

Alex: OK.

Maria: Then could you sweep the floor?

Alex: Is that my job? I'm a waiter not a cleaner.

Maria: Yes, it is part of your job you know.

3

Mr Kent: Well Alex. How was your first day?

Alex: Great. I've enjoyed it. But shall we move some

tables outside? People like sitting outside. And we could serve more interesting food perhaps.

I mean, some of it's really boring.

Mr Kent: Now, just a minute.

Alex: Let's go into the kitchen now. I've got some

ideas. I can make one of my special recipes if

you like.

That won't be necessary Alex. I don't think

being a waiter is the right job for you.

Shall I put the advert back in the window Mr Maria:

Kent?

#### Recording 13b

There are seven questions in this part. For each question, there are three pictures and a short recording. Choose the correct picture and put a tick in the box below it. You will hear each recording twice.

1 What does the woman order?

Excuse me. I want to buy one of those Woman:

jackets over there. The one with a belt and a collar but you don't have my size - 36.

Shop assistant: You'll have to order it. Shall I have a look

on the computer for you? It's got a zip up the front, hasn't it? Well, I'm afraid we haven't got any more but we have one exactly like it but without the belt.

Woman: I don't really like belts anyway so that's

fine. I'll order it. Now, may I try on that

skirt - the one in the window.

Shop assistant: Of course.

Now listen again. (The recording is repeated.)

2 Where is the boy?

Hi. Mum. Tack:

Hello, Jack. I expected you home half an hour Mum:

ago. Where are you?

Well I got on the wrong bus. I've walked back Tack:

> to the bus station. It took a long time but there isn't a bus now for two hours. So would you come and pick me up? I'll wait for you here.

I'm sorry Jack. I'm afraid I can't. I'm finishing Mum:

some work. Why don't you call a taxi?

Now listen again. (The recording is repeated.)

3 When will the man see Dr Browning?

Receptionist: Good morning. Dr Browning's surgery.

Oh, hello. I've got an appointment tomorrow Man: afternoon at a quarter to six. Could I change

it please? I need to come earlier.

OK. Just a minute. Er ... we've got one at Receptionist:

ten to three and one at five past four.

Thanks. I'll take the earlier one. Man:

Now listen again. (The recording is repeated.)

4 Where will the man park his car?

Excuse me, can I leave my car here? Man:

No, I'm afraid not. This is just for people who Woman:

live in the flats. But if you carry on down this street and take the first road on the left, you'll come to a crossroads. Go straight over and then take the first turning on the right. There's a car park at the end of that street. It's never

busy and it's not far. Oh, thank you so much.

Man: Now listen again. (The recording is repeated.)

5 What do they decide to do?

Do you want to go out tonight? What about

going to see a film at the cinema?

There's nothing good on. Shall we go to that Woman:

new restaurant?

It's quite expensive. Let's rent a DVD. We'll Man:

have more choice than at the cinema.

All right. I can't really afford the restaurant Woman:

Now listen again. (The recording is repeated.)

6 What does Jane want Maria to do?

Hi Maria. It's me. Jane. Could you help me please? I know you're looking after your little brother today. Well, my mum's ill and there's nobody to look after my sister. I've got to go to work in the shop. They'll be really annoyed if I don't go. So can you do it? My sister can play with your brother. I'll borrow my friend's car and drive her to your flat before I go to work. Ring me back as soon as you can. Now listen again. (The recording is repeated.)

7 How will the woman travel to the city centre?

Receptionist: Good morning madam.

Woman: Good morning. I want to go into the city

centre. I'm thinking of walking there. Is it far?

It'll take you about half an hour. Shall I Receptionist:

book you a taxi? That would be quicker. Or

you could take the underground. That's the

fastest way.

I'm not in a hurry so I'll go on foot. And I'll Woman:

see more that way. Thank you for your help.

Now listen again. (The recording is repeated.)

#### Recording 14

Rosie: Mum ... Mum ... You'll never guess. I'm going

to be on TV.

Mum: Really?

Yes. A few weeks ago the local TV station had a Rosie:

big advert outside for people to appear on a

programme called 'Life in The Castle'.

What castle? Mum:

Oh, it's in Scotland somewhere. The idea is that Rosie:

a group of people go and live together there for a week and they're filmed. You know ...

Mum: You mean it's one of these reality TV

programmes?

Yes. That's right. We live together in the castle Rosie:

and pretend it's hundreds of years ago. We have to look after the animals and things like that.

Mum: Well, I'm not sure about this. Who are the other people? Rosie: Oh, we're all ordinary people. We don't have to Team A man: be good at acting or anything like that. I see, but how were you chosen? Mum: Rosie: Well, when I saw the advert I went in and Team A man: talked to them and then I forgot about it. But I've just had a letter. Mum: So you're going to live in the castle ... Rosie: ... for a week. Oh, I'm so excited. But there are Ouestioner: lots of rules about what we must and mustn't do. Mum: Are you allowed to phone me? Ouestioner: Rosie: No we mustn't use mobile phones. Mum: That'll be difficult for you. Team B man: Rosie: I know. And we mustn't take modern equipment with us like CD players. There's no electricity anyway. But we have to wear a microphone all the time for the TV programme. Team B man: Mum: So, no mobile you said. You ought to take a diary so you can write down what happens. Rosie: That's not allowed either. Mum: Well, it'll be boring. You could take some Team B man: books Rosie: No books. And we don't have to take our own clothes because they give us those. I expect Team B man: they'll be horrible. Ouestioner: Mum: Do you need to take any food with you? Rosie: They give us food because we can't grow it all Ouestioner: like they did hundreds of years ago but we have to cook the meals. Why don't you cook me a meal tonight as Mum: practice? Rosie: OK. I should learn to cook I suppose. Mum: Well, you must read the letter carefully and check the details. You shouldn't sign anything until you've done that. Rosie: I have read it Mum. DJ: And if you don't like it there? Mum: Rosie: We needn't stay there if we don't like it. But I Mum: And I suppose ... I shouldn't worry so much. Rosie: No, I'll be fine. You really needn't worry. I Della: must phone my friends and tell them.

#### Recording 15

Just a minute.

Mum:

Questioner:

And let's see how we're doing so far.

Team A, you have six points. For the last round of our quiz, we have our 'guess what's in the photo' question. Team A, it's your turn first. Can you say what's in the photo?

Team A man:

Mmm ... It might be an insect, I think it

A man: Mmm ... It might be an insect. I think it could be a butterfly because those are its wings.

Team A woman: It can't be a butterfly because it hasn't got a body. It could be a hairbursh. Team A woman: A strange hairbrush! What about a flower? But it's got a hole in it. Team A woman: Mmm, you're right. It can't be a flower .. I know, that's paper, so it must be a book - it's an open book. Is that your answer? Man and woman: Yes OK. Team B. Here's your photo. Are you able to say what the object is? Let's see. I think it may be a headlight ... of a car. Team B woman: Mmm. I don't think so. I think it's something very small. Mmm. It could be a needle. That's the hole at the end of the needle. Team B woman: No it's the wrong shape, it can't be a needle. Oh dear, I can't decide what it is. Oh. It might be a pencil. Team B woman: Oh yes. Wait a minute. It must be a pen because that looks like ink. Oh, yes. Is that your answer? Team B woman: Yes. It's a pen. Both teams have answered correctly. Picture A is the top of an open book and Picture B is the end of a pen. Now, Team A, will you be able to come back next week? (yes) Team B, will you be able to come back next week? (ves) Good, because next week ...

DJ: Hi everybody and welcome to our very special phone-in. I have one of my favourite singers here with me. Della Dombey, we're so excited to have you here in Manchester with us all the way from the USA!

Della: And I'm excited to be here. Thank you for inviting me.

DJ: Thank you for agreeing to answer listeners' questions.

Della: It's my pleasure.

DJ: Well, we've got lots of people waiting to speak to you, so let's hear our first one. And it's Chrissie. Chrissie, what's your question?

Chrissie: Hi Della. Della: Hi.

Chrissie: Um, do you like Manchester?
Della: Yes, I do. It's a great city.

Chrissie: How long are you going to stay here?

	But I have to go to London after the concert
	here at the weekend.
DJ:	I'm looking forward to that concert very much.
Della:	So am I!
TVI.	Many looks hoose over nows college This is Cobring

Only four days. I know that's not long enough.

Now let's hear our next caller. This is Sabrina. DI: Hi. Sabrina. Della:

Della:

Sabrina: Uh, hello Della. Um. Where did you sing in public for the first time?

Umm, at my high school concert, I was terrible! Della: We don't believe that! And now here's Matt DI:

with his question. Matt: Della, have you been to any clubs in Manchester? No, I haven't. But my boyfriend and I are going Della: out tonight. We know Manchester has some

fantastic clubs.

Who is your boyfriend now, Della? DI:

Dean Bradley. We're still together. I know the Della: newspapers say we're not, but they're wrong!

I'm happy to hear that, Della. Now we've just DI: time for one more question. And it's from Sassy.

My question is about music, Della. We all love Sassv: your music, but whose music do you like best?

Ah. My boyfriend Dean's! He's really talented Della: and I know he's going to be famous soon.

Well, I'm afraid we've run out of time. Sorry to DJ: everyone who didn't ask their question and a big thank you to Della Dombey. And if you ...

#### Recording 16b

Look at the six sentences for this part. You will hear a conversation between a teenager, Amy, and her mother about a trip. Decide if each sentence is correct or incorrect. If it is correct put a tick in the box under A for YES. If it is not correct put a tick in the box under B for NO. You will hear the recording twice.

Amy: Mum ... I've just given up my job in the café.

Mum: What?

I decided to leave. I've got plans. Amy:

I'm sure they'll understand if you say you Mum: made a mistake. You can't leave a job after such a short time. Give them a ring in the morning and explain.

No, I'm not going to do that. It's not that I Amy: didn't like the job or anything. In fact I'm sorry to leave. But I've got other plans now.

What plans have you got? Mum: Amy: We're going to travel. Mum: Where are you going to go?

Round the world. Amy:

Mum: And how long is this trip going to take?

At least six months. Amy:

Well, which countries are you going to visit? Mum: First of all Thailand and India and then maybe Amy: China.

Mum: But just a minute. You said we. Who's going

with you?

Amy: Ricky.

Ricky ... Now, is he that boy who you used to Mum: see on the bus? The one you talked about all the time? Does his mum work in the library?

No. Mum, not him! I'm talking about my Amy: cousin Ricky.

Oh. But I haven't seen him since he was about 15. Mum: No, neither have I. But he sent me an email on Amv: my birthday last year and I replied and he's phoned and emailed me several times since then.

But are you sure you'll get on all right? You Mum: don't really know him. I always liked him when he was little.

So did I. And it's not the first time he's been to Amv: Asia so that'll be helpful.

But do you like doing the same kinds of things? Mum: Yes, we do. I like sports and adventure and so Amy: does Ricky.

Mum: OK. So when is all this going to happen?

Amv: Next month.

Well, that's not very long to make all the Mum:

arrangements.

No, it isn't so we've already started but I think Amy: we ought to get together before we set off.

So do I. You don't even know what he looks like Mum: now. All right then, let's get a map ...

Now listen again. (The recording is repeated.)

Hello, welcome to Forest Adventure! I'm Isobel and I'd like to tell you a few things before you go to your cottage so you can find everything easily. We have so many facilities, and I don't want you to miss anything. If you look at this map beside me, you can see that the cottages are all across the lake from this building. You can reach your cottage by car over the bridge or you can walk or cycle round the lake on the paths. Cars aren't allowed on these paths, so they're very safe. You can hire bikes in the bicycle store, which is the building next to this one. You can cycle anywhere in the park, except on the road and in the square. The swimming pools are at the east end of the lake, with three restaurants above them. The square and café are in front of the swimming pool building. The shops are opposite, with a hairdresser, a chemist and so on. At the other end of the lake we have the gym with the tennis courts and skateboarding area behind it. You can borrow rackets and other equipment from the kiosk between the courts and the skateboarding area. The disco is under the gym. Can you see the island in the lake? There's a barbecue on the island twice a week. When you arrive at your cottage you'll find details of all our special events. And of course we have paths through the forest where you can get away from

everything for a quiet walk. But I'll leave you to enjoy exploring those. If you have any questions, please do call in here. We're here to make your stay as much fun as we possibly can. Now, let me give you your cottage keys.

#### Recording 18

Simon: And now, what about the sports events we can

look forward to in the next few months?

Dea: Well, in ten days there's one of my favourite events, the London Marathon.

Simon: And are you taking part this year?

Dea: Yes, I love it. I run every day for one or two hours. So I'm nearly ready for it, I hope.

Simon: That's great, we'll all watch you on the day of the race. And now, what else?

Dea: Well, we've got some great football very soon.

Next month there's the Cup Final in London of

course.

Dea:

Dea:

Simon: That's on the 18th, right?

Dea: OK, so that's in your diary now. But don't forget the rugby final in Paris. That's what I'm going to watch. That's the same weekend, but on Sunday.

Simon: Yeah, and there's more great football, at the European Champions' final, which is at the end of the month in Dublin.

Then if you're a motor racing fan, don't forget the British Grand Prix in July. But don't wait

till July to get your tickets.

Simon: And talking of tickets that sell out, this summer, as usual, fans will arrive at sunrise and queue for hours to see their favourite tennis stars play at Wimbledon.

Dea: I think, if you want to go during the first week, it's worth waiting until five o'clock. You can get in more cheaply then and still see some wonderful tennis.

Simon: That's true. I did that on my birthday last year and saw several big name players.

Dea: Of course, if it rains during a match, you don't get your money back, but that's a chance you have to take.

Simon: Yeah, well that's sport in the summer in England, isn't it?

And that's all. We haven't got any more time at the moment, but we'll be back tomorrow with more music and chat. So bye from me.

Simon: And bye from me!

Mr Orwell: OK everyone. That's all for today. Don't forget your homework for Thursday. Katie, can I talk

to you for a minute?

Katie: Yes?

Mr Orwell: Katie, why haven't you asked me for a

university application form?

Katie: Oh, well. Umm, you see, well, I mean. I've changed my mind. I don't feel like going to university.

Mr Orwell: But you're a very good student.

Katie: Well, my sisters, you know, Emma and Olivia insist on applying for the same university as me.

Mr Orwell: Mm. Well I approve of that plan.

Katie: Do you?

Mr Orwell: You're interested in studying different subjects, and it'll be good to have people you know at university, so I don't think there's a problem.

Katie: Sorry, but there is. They're both so good at their subjects and if I'm not good enough, what will I do?

Mr Orwell: You mean you think your sisters may succeed in getting places at university, but not you?

Katie: Yes, I'm really worried about it. They've already started to fill in the forms.

Mr Orwell: So talk to them. Explain your feelings. You usually get on well with your sisters. And you may find that they're also worried about getting places at university.

Katie: I don't think so. They're really excited about going away to study.

Mr Orwell: Shall I tell you a secret?

Katie: Er ... OK.

Mr Orwell: Last week Emma came to me in private. She said she didn't want to go to university because

Katie: She was worried she'd be the only one who didn't get a place?

Mr Orwell: Exactly! And yesterday, Olivia told me the same thing. So stop worrying about it. I'm sure you'll all do well. I'm looking forward to congratulating you all on your exam results.

Katie: Oh, thank you. And thank you for listening to me, And to my sisters.

Mr Orwell: Now take this application form. Give it back to me by Friday and I'll look through it with you.

Katie: Yes, I will. OK. Bye. Thanks.

Mr Orwell: Bye Katie.

Mickey: Hi, Cristina.
Cristina: Hi, Mickey.
Mickey: How was work?

Cristina: Horrible as usual. The manager has put up a notice today. It says 'No talking except on

business'. He's not human!

Mickey: Oh, dear. Well, you'll soon have enough money for the big trip to New Zealand, then you can

leave.

Well, I advise students to make several things Yes, I don't enjoy working there. I haven't had | Jeff: before they consider selling anything. You need a pleasant day since joining that company! to practise using different materials and Well, I've been busy too. I've been on the Mickey: Internet since finishing my essay. We need to making different designs. I can help you. But I can't afford to buy a lot of materials. get plenty of information before planning our Garth: People like expensive stones. holiday. I found this website while looking for ideas about South Island. Sure. But for now, I suggest practising with Jeff: simple things. Cristina: Yeah? OK. Will you help us to choose the best beads It's about this place called Doubtful Sound. Garth: Mickey: to start with? Cristina: Funny name! Of course. I've got some coloured, plastic Yeah, it's like a kind of lake in the National Mickey: Teff: beads, or some stones here if you feel like Park, It's brilliant for natural beauty. making something heavier. Can we go walking there? You promised to go Cristina: Oh, beads for me. I hate wearing heavy jewellery. walking with me on holiday. Marv: But I don't mind. Well, we probably can, but, um, actually this Garth: Mickey: OK, but remember to check the weight of your website is about a company that does boat trips. leff: materials before you begin. Avoid making Is it a good place to take photos? Cristina: jewellery which is so heavy you can't wear it! I Oh, yeah, we'll see some fantastic scenery, so Mickey: remember making some earrings for a taking photographs is one of the main customer. They were beautiful, but she only attractions of the trip. wore them once. She made me use lots of What about animals? Cristina: heavy stones and they hurt her ears so much It says here, 'Seeing dolphins and seals is Mickey: she couldn't wear them! OK. Let's look at the almost certain, seeing penguins is a possibility.' Really? It's one of my dreams to see some other things you need. I've got some nylon or Cristina: leather here. I'll let you decide. Which do you penguins. prefer to use? Anyway, we'll look at the website again before Mickey: booking. You can see what the Mary: Nylon for me. Well, I plan to wear this one myself, so leather accommodation's like, too. Garth: Cristina Good. And here are the stones and beads. Try to find Mickey: It sounds quite comfortable, and they provide Teff: some which look good together. food of course. In fact it says 'When booking, please tell us if you are vegetarians.' So that's Mary: Oh, they're beautiful. Yeah, I'd like to use these square black ones. OK for you. Garth: Don't forget. Design something simple this time. Cristina: Yeah. It does sound good. Teff: Oh, yes. Mickey: We can book by filling in this form online. We Mary: can do it without leaving the house. I'll make Right, let's begin. leff: some coffee and then we can look at it together. Thanks, that's a good idea. I need a good coffee Cristina: after working in that office all day! Mrs Scott: Good morning Edina, please have a seat. Thank you, Mrs Scott. Edina: Mrs Scott: OK, so you'd like a job in my souvenir shop for six months. Teff: In a few minutes I'm going to teach you to make necklaces, but before we start I'd like to Edina: Yes. I've finished school and I want to work share some ideas with you. When you decide and travel before I go to university next year. When I finish working here, I'll probably travel to make something, think about what you abroad. That's why I want to earn some money. intend to do with it. Can you imagine wearing Mrs Scott: I see. Well, you know the wages aren't very it yourself? Do you hope to sell it? At first it high, but if you work here on Sundays, you'll may not be perfect ... earn extra money. And we close at six, so your Mary: But I just want to make interesting jewellery evenings will be free if you work here. Have for myself. I don't mind wearing something you worked in a shop before? which isn't completely perfect, if I've made it.

Edina:

I want to sell mine if I can. It needs to be really

good or nobody will want to buy it.

Garth:

Yes, well, the camera shop. Do you know it?

The one near the park.

Well, I know you can't go away now, but if you Mrs Scott: Oh, right, Yes, I know the owner. Simon Brown, Patti: could go anywhere in the world, where would isn't it? So, Edina, what's the most important vou go? thing about working in a shop? If I went away now, I'd choose somewhere Edina: You have to serve people quickly. Customers Carl: warm and sunny, but quiet. get annoyed if they have to wait. Mmm. But wouldn't vou be bored if it was a Parti: Mrs Scott: That's quite right. quiet place? And you must also smile and be friendly. Edina: No, because I'd write songs. I wouldn't want to Mrs Scott: Mm. If the shop assistants aren't friendly, the Carl: talk to people if I had songs to write. (Yeah, shop loses customers. right.) Of course I'd go somewhere lively if I Edina: Yes. didn't have any work to do at all, somewhere Mrs Scott: If I phone the camera shop, will Simon with lots of clubs and good shops! recommend you? Uh-huh. I know you have many interests apart Patti: Edina: Yes. I think so. from your songwriting. You've had a lot of Mrs Scott: OK. You'll start work on Monday unless I success with that of course, but if you weren't phone you. I just want to have a quick chat a songwriter, what would you be? with Simon first, but I'm sure everything will Mm. If I wasn't a songwriter, I'd be a fashion be fine. You can start on Monday? Carl: Oh, yes. What time do I need to be here? designer. Edina: Really? Mrs Scott: If I don't phone you tomorrow, you'll start at Patti: Yeah, I studied design at university for a year Carl: nine o'clock. before I had my first successful song. I really OK. Thanks very much. Edina: like unusual clothes. But I never have enough Mrs Scott: So, what about this trip you want the money time to look for them. for? Where do you plan to go? Maybe when you're not so busy. On that Well, if I save two thousand pounds, I'll go to Patti: Edina: holiday you're going to have one day. South America. But if not, I mean, if I don't save as much as that, I'll go round Europe. Carl: Yeah, maybe. Well, Carl. I hope that'll be soon. And thank Patti: Mrs Scott: Oh, that sounds very exciting. you for giving us your time today. I hope it will be. You're welcome. Mrs Scott: I'm sure it will. So, OK, that's it for now. Carl: Thanks, goodbye. Edina: Mrs Scott: Bye. Hi, Maria. I'm going to the cinema this Alan: Recording 23 afternoon. Do you want to come? Well, what are you going to see? Welcome to Music World. I'm Patti and our Maria: Patti: 'Norman Starman III.' Alan: guest this week is every band's favourite Norman what? Maria: songwriter, Carl Ryder. Where have you been? This is the third Carl: Hi, Patti. Alan: Norman Starman film. The first two Starman Thanks for coming to the studio, Carl. We Patti: films were made about three years ago. know you've had a lot of success in the past I never saw them. few years, but is life in the music business all Maria: They're just brilliant. Really funny. In the second Alan: fun, or are there any disadvantages? one the main part was given to a different actor, Carl: Well, it is fun, yes, but if you want to be successful but he was just as good as the first one. it's hard work. That can cause problems. (Mm?) So what are they about? Maria: For example, I wish I had more free time. Well, they're all about this guy Norman. He's a Alan: What would you do, if you didn't have so much Patti: space traveller. (Oh, yeah.) And, um, in the first work? film Norman is caught by aliens and he is Well, if I had time, I'd go to more concerts. It's Carl: taken to their planet. good for me to hear new bands. Maria: So what happens? I hope you'll get a break soon. But what about Patri: new songs? Are you writing any at the moment? Alan: He's taught to speak their language and he's changed by their scientists so he looks like Oh yeah, I am. But it's tiring, because I'm Carl: them. But he still feels like a fifteen-year-old trying to write new songs in the evening and in human. It's really funny. the day I'm going to meetings, working with Is that how it ends? singers and so on. I wish I wasn't so busy. It Maria:

would be good if I could spend a few weeks

somewhere just writing songs.

Yeah? And what about the others? Will: Alan: No, at the end of the film he escapes. He flies She said my friends should help too but they'd Nick: away in one of their spaceships but he doesn't disappeared by then. All that shouting realise that two of the aliens are hiding in the frightened them I think. spaceship. So these aliens go to earth with him. It sounds quite funny. Will: So you washed up? Maria: Yeah, it is. They get on well together on the Nick: Yeah. But she was still angry. She seems to Alan: journey and various things happen, you know. forget all the things I do to help. So I said that I had washed the car the week before but that But the spaceship is damaged when they land, seemed to make her angrier because I forgot although they aren't hurt, luckily. And that's how it ends. that she paid me to do that. Will: So what did she say then? Maria: What happens in the second film, then? She said she was going to keep my pocket Nick: Alan: Well, he's on earth, but he's got these two aliens with him. Norman is arrested by the army and money this week. he's put in a special kind of prison with the aliens. Will: No way! Nick: So I can't go out tonight either because I Maria: Why? The humans think he's an alien too because he haven't got any money. Alan: Will: I can lend you some. I'll see you at the bus stop looks like them now. The soldiers don't believe at 8 then? him when he tries to explain. Anyway, one of them, a woman, believes him in the end and Nick: Great. See you there. she helps him escape. She has the spaceship repaired at a friend's garage. But the aliens are Tim. I've just read this article. I wrote the Boss: waiting to be rescued and that's what the third headline for you and we found a good photo film will be about. but you've written about football. That's not Maria: Yeah, I'd like to see it. I wonder what will happen. what our readers want. They want to know the Mm. The aliens will be rescued, I guess, and Alan: interesting things about Joe Chapman. Did you then they'll go back to their planet again. But I ask him the questions I gave you? Did you ask don't know how it'll be done. I'm sure Norman him about his new girlfriend? will get into trouble somehow. No, but I asked him why he hadn't scored any Well, let's go. It'll be nice to do something silly Tim: Maria: goals on Saturday - he usually scores at least one. for a change. Boss: Recording 25 I asked him how his knee was because he'd Tim: hurt it in training. He said it was getting better. Nick: Hi Will. It's Nick here. Will: Hi. Hey, where were you on Friday night? Boss: I'm delighted. I told him to be careful the next time. I'm sorry I didn't meet you. That's why I'm Tim: Nick: Great. But did you ask him who he was with at ringing. I had an argument with my mum. Boss: that nightclub last week? Will: What was it about? No, but I asked him if his mother always Tim: Well, I didn't have to go to college on Friday so Nick: watched his games. I asked a few friends round. I hadn't expected Very interesting I'm sure. And does she? mum to come home early. So when she arrived Boss: Yes, every single one. Tim: she was really angry. Did you ask him about the argument with the Will: Boss: Why? new manager? Oh, you know, because there were some dirty Nick: plates and a few saucepans. Tim: No, but I asked him how long he was going to Will: Why? Were you cooking? stay with the team. I asked him if he was Yeah. We had some spaghetti. Anyway she said happy. He said that he had no plans to move to Nick: I couldn't go out because I hadn't tidied the another club. I'm very pleased for him. But surely you asked house and I hadn't washed up. Boss: him about his free time? We want to know Will: That's so unfair. where he goes, what he does. She said she was expecting visitors and the Nick: No, but I invited him to have lunch with me Tim: house was dirty and untidy. after the interview. Will: Was it? Not really. But she said I had to stay at home. Boss: And he agreed? Nick: Tim: But I did feel a bit guilty so I said I would wash Yes.

Boss: So then you asked him about the TV

programme he's going to do?

Tim: No, but he reminded me to watch the match next Saturday as it's a really important one.

Boss: But not very interesting information for our

readers.

Tim: I asked him where he would play next Saturday - which position. He said that he'd

play his normal position - Centre forward.

Boss: What about those fashion adverts he's in - for men's clothes? Did you ask him how much he

earns from those?

Tim: No, but I asked him if his team would win the cup. He said he expected them to win for the third time. Oh and we didn't get a photograph of him because he asked us not to take any.

Boss: Oh, next time I'll do it myself. And I advise you not to do any more interviews with Joe Chapman.

#### Recording 27

Welcome to the TBC studios. My name is Rob and I'm going to show you round. I know some of you are interested in working in television so please ask me any questions. We may meet some other people who you can talk to while we're walking round. OK. So follow me please. This way.

This is the news studio. Here's the desk where the newsreader sits to read the news. Behind the studio is the newsroom where the news team choose the stories which will be in the news. Every morning they choose the headline the newsreader will read first. We call that the lead story. But by the evening, the headlines will probably change. And here's a man whose face you'll recognise. Hello, Gavin. Gavin presents the lunchtime news every day. Gavin, have you got time to answer a few questions? Anyone like to ask ...

I'm sure you know where we are now - this is the sitting room which belongs to the Baxter family. They live in Solomon Street - that's the soap opera which you can see every evening at 7 on TBC. Well, some of you seem to recognise it. Lots of things have happened here. This is the room where Mark asked Jill to marry him and here's a photo which shows them on their wedding day. Ten million people watched that. And through the window you can see the café which Mark owns. It's only the front of the café of course. The inside is in a different studio. Anyone keen on sport? OK. Well this is the sports room where we report on all the sports events which take place around the world. We have different presenters who are all experts in their sport. For instance, people who were stars like Sally Ravenna, the tennis champion and Peter Davenport, the international rugby player. And it looks as though we're lucky today. Here's a footballer you'll

recognise. He played for England over 50 times. Hello Jack. Now Jack's the man whose old boots were sold recently for £10,000. Well, Jack, there's an important football match tonight. I believe ...

Holly: Max?

Max: Hi, Holly.

Holly: Are you ready to go to the party?

Max: No. I don't know what to wear. I've got so few

nice clothes.

Holly: Well, what about your blue shirt?

Max: It isn't smart enough. And it's too small for me.

Holly: What?

Max: I think I've grown.

Holly: Don't be so silly. You're twenty-three. You

haven't grown, you're just too fat.

Max: You say such unkind things to me. You don't

understand because you're so lucky.

Holly: What do you mean?

Max: You lose weight so easily.

Holly: You talk such nonsense! I'm slim because I

walk everywhere. Your problem is that you

don't take enough exercise.

Max: But I have so little time. You don't know what

my job's like. I'm so busy that I can't think

about keeping fit.

Holly: But you could walk to work.

Max: It's too far to walk.

Holly: You're such a lazy person! You never walk

anywhere.

Max: I walk around in my lunch break.

Holly: But you just look in the shop windows. You

never walk quickly enough. Anyway, if you really want to get fit, you could join a gym, like me.

Max: They cost such a lot of money! I don't have

enough money for gym membership.

Holly: My gym isn't too expensive.

Max: I'm sure it is.

Holly: Well you can start by thinking about what you eat. I know you eat the wrong food. You have

too much ice cream and too many burgers.

And you don't eat enough fruit.

Max: I sometimes have a salad with my burger, but it

costs extra.

Holly: You make so many excuses. How can anyone

help you!

Nancy: Did you watch TV last night?

Steve: No, I was out. Was there anything good on?

Nancy: Well there's this new cartoon series, it's very

funny.

Steve: Yeah?

Nancy: It's called Orville. What happened last night.

Well, there was this man, Orville, OK, and he had a beautiful girlfriend, Claudia, who was a

model and she loved him, but he was

extremely jealous. And, um, Claudia went to an evening class to learn Greek. (Yeah.) Well, he asked Claudia about the evening class, but he didn't believe her so he followed her to see where she went. He put on a false beard as he didn't want her to recognise him. (OK.) Anyway, when she arrived at the college for her class, there was another young man, um

Damian, in the entrance hall.

Steve: And why was Damian there?
Nancy: Because he was waiting for his girlfriend, a

teacher, I think.

Steve: Oh.

Nancy: But Claudia knew Damian because of her job.
He was a fashion photographer. Damian said
"Hi!" and they began talking, so Orville started
shouting at him. He thought Claudia was lying
about the Greek lessons and that she had a

date with Damian. (Mm) Orville was making a terrible noise so the college receptionist called the police. And the police came and Orville didn't know what to do. He'd forgotten that he was still wearing the false beard.

was still wearing the false of

Steve: Oh, right.

Nancy: He said to Claudia, 'Tell them who I am!' She said nothing since she didn't recognise him.

Steve: Really?

Nancy: Yes, because of the beard. Well, it was a very big beard. No-one helped him so he was taken to the police station. It was so funny.

Steve: But why was it funny?

Nancy: Because of the beard and Orville's face and, oh,

I don't know. Watch it next week and see.

Steve: OK, well, perhaps.

#### Recording 30

Mr Smart: 377203.

Selina: Hallo, Mr Smart?

Mr Smart: Yes.

Selina: Hi, I'm Selina and I'm phoning from Bestways

Tours Holiday Company.

Mr Smart: Yes?

Selina: I believe you've just returned from a holiday

with our company.

Mr Smart: Yes.

Selina: We always phone our customers when they

return home. May I take a few minutes of your

time to ask you how it was?

Mr Smart: Oh, OK, if it doesn't take too long.

Selina: Thank you. Well, first, did you enjoy your

holiday?

Mr Smart: Well, I enjoyed most of the holiday, but I didn't

enjoy the first night.

Selina: Oh, why was that?

Mr Smart: Because of the noise. Although I asked for a quiet hotel, your company put me in the Concordia, on the main road along the beach. My wife and I both work very hard and we need to relax when we're on holiday. The first night, we couldn't sleep until the clubs and restaurants closed. That was four o'clock in the

the morning!

Selina: Oh, dear. I hope our local staff were able to

help you.

Mr Smart: Not at first. I phoned your local office in the morning, but unfortunately both the manager and his assistant were out.

Selina: I'm sure the manager phoned you as soon as he could.

Mr Smart: Although I left several messages, he didn't phone me back until the second day. I couldn't change my hotel until then,

Selina: But was the second hotel all right?

Mr Smart: Oh, yes, he offered us either the San Francisco or the Cristina and we moved to the San Francisco after I spoke to him, and that was lovely. Well, the hotel was excellent but the food was boring. Anyway, we didn't mind that very much, we ate out most nights. In spite of

the bad start, we had a good holiday.

Selina: I'm so pleased. Well, I'm going to tell our bookings manager about your problems as soon as she comes into the office. I think someone made a mistake with your hotel reservation.

Mr Smart: Thank you. Will you phone me when you find out what went wrong? I'd really like to know.

Selina: Yes, of course, I understand. I'll either phone or email you.

Mr Smart: Good, thank you. Selina: My pleasure. Goodbye.

Mr Smart: Goodbye.

#### A1

Sample answer:

B beautiful grey silk C grey cotton

D short black wool E white leather

#### A2

They're shopping. They talk about A, D and E.

#### A3

2 Emily 3 shopping 4 Callum 5 Callum

6 (the) computer shop

7 (a) computer game

We use adjectives ending in -ed to talk about feelings. We use adjectives ending in -ing to talk about things.

#### A4

1 short black wool

2 favourite long black

3 white leather

Lovely and favourite describe someone's opinion.

Short and long describe size or shape.

Grey, black and white describe colour.

Wool and leather describe the material.

Opinion adjectives usually go first.

Material adjectives usually go last.

#### **C1**

2 g 3 c 4 f 5 c 6 a 7 b

(Grammar B1)

#### C2

2 I wore my dirty old blue jeans when I painted the ceiling.

3 I borrowed my sister's lovely long silk dress to wear to the party.

4 I was surprised that Mike wore that white cotton jacket.

5 He bought some expensive new shoes yesterday.

6 Jenny's father gave her a beautiful long gold necklace for her 18th birthday.

(Grammar B2)

#### **C**3

2 tired 3 bored 4 tiring 5 surprised 6 excited 7 boring 8 amazing 9 annoyed 10 interested (Grammar B3)

#### C4

bus stop city centre credit card football boots evening performance film star fire engine police car traffic jam wedding invitation

2 film star 3 credit card 4 football boots 5 evening performance 6 traffic jam

(Grammar B4)

#### **C5**

There is a lovely and sandy beach and the sea is blue and warm.

beautiful old

The town has lots of old beautiful buildings. My parents like

art galleries bored

going to the galleries art but I get boring so I go to the shops. You

can buy cheape clothes there.

favourite restaurant

I hope we'll go to my <u>restaurant favourite</u>. Write back and tell exciting

me all your excited news.

(Grammar B1, B2, B3, B4)

#### Exam task

1 G 2 E 3 F 4 D 5 A

#### Grammar focus

2 beautiful old 3 pleasant flat 4 pretty little

5 active young 6 popular new

#### 1

#### A1

A He's working in an office.

B She's at school.

C They're preparing for a party.

#### A2

1 Josh is outside his office. He's going home because there's a party for his sister's 16th birthday.

2 Josh is on a train. His sister's unhappy because she wants him to be there on her birthday (and she hasn't had his present).

3 Josh is in the station. His sister is at her friend's house because the party is a surprise.

#### A3

1 quickly 2 carefully 3 usually 4 perfectly We add -ly to the adjective. quick, careful, usual, perfect

#### A4

extremely very really rather They make the meaning stronger.

#### A5

to the station; now always; round the corner very slowly; outside our house patiently; at her friend's house often; there; after school

how often?	how?	where?	when?
always often	very slowly patiently	to the station round the corner outside our house at her friend's house there	now after school

#### **C1**

2 suitable 3 unhappily 4 honest 5 politely 6 angry 7 calmly 8 differently 9 sensibly 10 slowly (Grammar B1 and B2)

#### C2

2 good 3 hard 4 correct 5 badly 6 correct 7 late 8 correct 9 well; clearly 10 correct (Grammar B1, B2 and B3)

#### C3

- 2 I missed the train yesterday. or Yesterday I missed the train.
- 3 I enjoyed that television programme very much.
- 4 correct
- 5 I have never been to Spain.
- 6 correct
- 7 They were still waiting when we arrived.
- 8 This shop is always open on Sundays.
- 9 correct
- 10 My friends and I went to a nightclub last night. or Last night my friends and I went to a nightclub.

(Grammar B4)

#### **C4**

Sample answers:

- 2 My best friend is really tall/pretty/clever.
- 3 Some sports are extremely dangerous/exciting.
- 4 In my country the people are fairly friendly/tall/serious.
- 5 When I come home from holiday I usually feel rather sad/lazy/relaxed.
- 6 In winter in Britain the weather is quite cold/wet/cloudy. (Grammar B5)

#### C5

- 2 but I went to a theme park <u>near London on Saturday</u>.

  or but on Saturday I went to a theme park <u>near London</u>.
- 3 I wanted to go on the big wheel but other people had the same idea as well
- 4 so I had to wait very patiently in the queue but it was a great
- 5 I also went on the water slide.
- 6 I had lunch in a café at midday or At midday I had lunch in a café
- 7 I'll never forget it.
- 8 I had a really wonderful day there. (Grammar B4 and B5)

#### Exam task

1B 2A 3B 4D 5C 6C 7B 8A 9B 10D

#### Grammar focus

#### 1

1 carefully 2 locally 3 usually 4 regularly 5 healthily

#### 6 separately 7 privately

#### 2

1 careful 2 local 3 usual 4 regular 5 healthy

#### 6 separate 7 private

#### A2

music posters reviews journalists adverts

#### A3

2 popular 3 expensive 4 smaller 5 good

#### A4

Which magazine	HITS!	BUZZ	SMASH
is the newest? has the most reviews? is the most expensive?		/	1
has the most adverts?	✓		

#### A5

A3 is about comparing two things; A4 is about comparing more than two things.

#### C1

2 bigger 3 nicer 4 more interesting 5 more nervous

6 richer 7 easier 8 hotter (Grammar B1)

#### C2

2 Golf is safer than horse-riding.

- 3 Water-skiing is more difficult than swimming.
- 4 Motorcycling is noisier than cycling.
- 5 Rugby balls are heavier than tennis balls.
- 7 Horse-riding isn't as safe as golf. Horse-riding is less safe than golf.
- 8 Swimming isn't as difficult as water-skiing. Swimming is less difficult than water-skiing.
- 9 Cycling isn't as noisy as motorcycling. Cycling is less noisy than motorcycling.
- 10 Tennis balls aren't as heavy as rugby balls. Tennis balls are less heavy than rugby balls. (Grammar B1)

- 2 She coloured the drawings neatly.
- 3 She explained her designs well.
- 4 She sewed her clothes beautifully.
- 6 more neatly; the most neatly
- 7 better; the best
- 8 more beautifully; the most beautifully

(Grammar B2)

#### **C**4

- old-new; tidy-untidy; small-big; near-far; expensive-cheap
- 2 the oldest house.
- 3 the tidiest garden.
- 4 the cheapest house.
- 5 the furthest from the city centre.
- 6 more
- 7 most
- 8 fewer
- 9 fewest
- 10 more

(Grammar B1 and B3)

#### Exam practice

- 1 more 2 funniest 3 am interested 4 as popular as
- 5 'm/am not

#### Grammar focus

0 as/so good as 1 most 2 as/so funny as 4 more popular

#### .

#### AI

1 a theatre 2 a sports stadium 3 a cinema 4 a market

#### A2

They saw the sports stadium and the theatre.

#### A3

- 2 is now turning 3 're now passing 4 normally goes 5 are practising
- **A4**
- 1 1 and 4
- 2 2, 3 and 5
- 3 1 and 4
- 4 2, 3 and 5

#### A5

have: a good time, a walk, lunch

have got: a map, a sore throat, a new entertainment centre, a cinema, air-conditioning, some good shops

#### **C1**

2 arrives 3 has 4 prepares 5 does 6 works 7 doesn't have 8 has 9 orders 10 doesn't leave (Grammar B1.)

#### C2

Follow model in C1. (Grammar B1)

#### C3

- 2 Are you coming 3 am/'m sitting 4 're waiting
- 5 are shouting 6 Is he talking 7 is/'s reading
- 8 am/m getting 9 is leaving 10 am/m coming (Grammar B2.)

#### C4

- 2 I'm working 3 I come 4 I get 5 I'm sharing
- 6 It's not/It isn't 7 I prefer 8 I don't want 9 Pm saving
- 10 I'm/I am getting

(Grammar B1,B2,B3.)

#### **C5**

- 2 I've got a headache.
- 3 She's got long straight hair.
- 4 Has your hotel got a swimming pool?
- 5 I haven't got much/any money.
- 6 Have these suitcases got locks (on them)?
- 7 The doctor hasn't got time to see you today. (Grammar B4.)

#### **C6**

- 2 has 3 go 4 is staying; am sleeping 5 Do you understand
- 6 are having 7 belong 8 is having

(Grammar B1, B2, B3, B4.)

#### Grammar focus

1 See B2 2 See B4 3 See B1. B3

#### Exam task

Sample answer:

Dear Sven

I'm staying at a campsite near the sea. It's a beautiful place with a good beach. The town's got restaurants and a sports hall but no nightclubs. In the evenings we have a barbecue on the beach. love Pia

#### A1

1 in a café 2 in a cinema 3 in an office

#### **A2**

He has a job (at the cinema).

#### A3

- 1 She phoned Donny.
- 2 Because he was listening to an argument.
- 3 She texted him.
- 4 He was watching the film.
- 5 She tried to contact him again.
- 6 Because he was talking to the manager.

#### A4

- 1 1, 3, 5
- 2 2, 4, 6
- 3 2, 4, 6
- 4 1, 3, 5

2 visited 3 saw 4 didn't work 5 was 6 had 7 went 8 ate 9 spent 10 found 11 bought 12 Did you go (Grammar B1, B2.)

#### C2

- 2 Tanya was buying the drinks and Tony was choosing the music.
- 3 Tanya was tidying the house and Tony was preparing the food.
- 4 Tanya was blowing up the balloons and Tony was decorating the rooms.
- 5 Tanya was ironing her dress and Tony was having a shower. (Grammar B3)

#### C3

- 2 were working met
- 3 was studying fell
- 4 was cooking burnt
- 5 was staying painted
- 6 was tidying discovered
- 7 were climbing saw
- (Grammar B1, B2, B3, B4)

#### C4

- 2 went 3 met 4 invited 5 didn't go 6 didn't get
- 7 was watching 8 was having 9 was reading 10 rang
- 11 looked 12 was standing 13 went 14 didn't open
- 15 got 16 had
- (Grammar B2, B3 (State verbs: have), B4)

#### **C**5

2 wanted 3 was 4 was counting 5 chose 6 wrapped 7 was waiting 8 decided 9 found 10 ran 11 looked 12 was searching 13 were looking 14 knocked 15 waved (Grammar, B1, B2, B3, B4)

#### **Grammar focus**

2 was carrying 3 stopped 4 looked 5 was following 6 dropped 7 ran

#### Exam task

#### Sample answer:

- .. The sun was shining and I was eating an ice cream. Two girls were standing in the middle of the square. They were looking at some photos. Their handbags were on the ground beside them.
- Suddenly, a boy ran across the square and took their handbags. When he came near me, I stood up and pushed my chair in front of him. He fell over and dropped the handbags. I took them to the girls. The café owner phoned the police and they took the thief away.

The girls thanked me and we had lunch together.

#### A2

Garry met Annie at the cinema.
Garry and Annie leave the party together.

#### A3

- 1 haven't put 2 haven't dried 3 made 4 Have ... met
- 5 I've worked 6 met 7 's worked 8 waited 9 've ... met 10 left

678

2

5

(1

(1

Ü

#### **A4**

- 1 Sentences 3, 6, 8 and 10. Simple past.
- 2 Sentences 1, 2, 4 and 9. Present perfect.
- 3 Sentences 5 and 7. Present perfect.

#### C1

- 2 've/have collected
- 3 've/have bought
- 4 haven't checked
- 5 've/have chosen
- 6 haven't packed
- 7 've/have phoned
- 8 've/have seen
- 9 said
- 10 haven't found
- 11 Have you looked
- 12 haven't got
- (Grammar B1)

#### C2

2 met 3 did you decide 4 began 5 ran 6 had 7 haven't paid 8 has won 9 have disappeared 10 have you planned 11 haven't chosen 12 have helped (Grammar B2)

#### C3

2 for 3 never 4 ago 5 Howlong 6 since 7 When 8 already 9 ever 10 still 11 yet (Grammar B2, B3)

#### C4

2 D 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 S (Grammar B2, B3, B4)

#### **Exam** practice

1 bigger than 2 got 3 haven't 4 has worked 5 enjoys

#### Grammar focus

1 D 2 D 3 D

#### A1

1 seven years ago 2 last week

#### A2

He wanted to see his friend Stefan. He saw new gardens and a new sports centre.

#### **A3**

- 2 arrived: had finished
- 3 had eaten: walked
- 4 used to be
- 5 use to be
- 6 had just started; left
- 7 had already decided
- 8 walked; saw

#### A4

- 1 used to
- 2 2 3 6 8 yes

#### **C1**

- 2 'd asked 3 had just left 4 had already gone
- 5 hadn't brought 6 hadn't shut 7 'd gone 8 'd realised
- 9 hadn't seen 10 'd booked
- (Grammar B1)

#### C2

- 2 had started 3 had/'d never seen 4 hadn't finished
- 5 had/'d never been 6 had already studied 7 had/'d just visited (Grammar B2, B3)

#### **C3**

- 2 used to walk 3 Did you use to know 4 used to be
- 5 didn't use to have 6 Did they use to travel 7 didn't use to go 8 used to have
- (Grammar B4)

#### **C4**

#### Sample answers:

- 2 used to be lazy
- 3 didn't use to be slim
- 4 used to ride a bike
- 5 didn't use to like my brother
- 6 didn't use to go to the cinema very often
- 7 used to be shy
- 8 didn't use to enjoy sport
- 9 used to be a vegetarian
- 10 used to live in the city centre
- (Grammar B4)

#### **C5**

Follow models in C4.

#### **Exam practice**

1 C 2 B 3 D 4 A 5 B 6 D 7 C 8 B 9 A 10 D

#### Grammar focus

- 1 They'd already started planning the baths.
- 2 They used to wash and meet their friends.
- 3 They'd built towns, roads and bridges.

#### A1

1 B 2 C 3 A

#### A2

- 1 the Andes
- 2 the Atlantic Ocean; Greece; Lake Garda
- 3 the Sahara Desert
- 4 Rome New York

We use the before the names of mountain ranges, deserts and oceans.

#### A3

jeans, shorts, shoes, trousers

You can use jeans, shorts and trousers only in the plural. Sock, shoe and shirt can be singular.

#### **A4**

1 music 2 traffic 3 information 4 money 5 advice You can't make these nouns plural because they are uncountable.

#### C1

boot, bracelet, earring, glove, shoe, sock (Grammar B1)

#### C2

3 euros 4 money 5 bread 6 vegetables 7 food 8 shops 9 information 10 travel 11 traffic 12 music 13 chairs 14 furniture 15 sand 16 stones (Grammar B2)

#### C3

2 a 3 - 4 the 5 a 6 The 7 The 8 the

1 a 2 the 3 the 4 the 5 the 6 - 7 the 8 a

3

1 a 2 - 3 the 4 a 5 a 6 the 7 the 8 the 9 The 10 - (Grammar B3, B4)

#### C4

- 2 Tom Cruise was wearing a black jacket, black jeans and black shoes.
- 3 I'm happy with a the furniture in my room, but I want to change the curtains.
- 4 I'm sending this card to wish you a good luck for your driving test.
- 5 My cousin's just been on a travel trip/journey round France.
- 6 I listen to musice when I'm working so I feel more relaxed.
- 7 The weather was marvellous so we went to the beach and swam in the sea.
- 8 I'll go to the swimming-pool for some informatione about diving lessons.
- 9 If I send you a money, will you buy me some earrings like yours?
- 10 We saw some lovely old towns in the Czech Republic on our last holiday.

(Grammar B1, B2, B3, B4)

#### Exam practice

1 1982 2 jewellery 3 museum 4 cinema 5 train 6 information

#### Grammar focus

- 2, 3, 4, 5, 6
- 3, 4, 5
- 2, 6
- Only one (we say travel by train, not by the train),

#### A1

- 1 On a train. He's ringing to say what time he'll arrive.
- 2 In a café. He's ringing to ask where his friend is.
- 3 In a newsagent's. She's looking for a job.
- 4 At home / in her kitchen. She's planning a birthday party.

#### **A3**

- 2 some food
- 3 because there isn't anybody in the café.
- 4 everybody
- 5 nothing
- 6 She's got no experience.
- 7 lots of people
- 8 some bread and some crisps
- 9 a couple of cakes

#### A4

- 1 much; few
- 2 anybody; nobody
- 3 nothing; anything
- 4 no; any
- 5 lots; lot of
- 6 couple; two

#### **C1**

2 an 3 any 4 some 5 some 6 any 7 some 8 some 9 any 10 no (Grammar B1)

#### 60

- 2 somewhere 3 no-one 4 somebody 5 nobody 6 nothing 7 somewhere 8 everybody 9 Nobody 10 No-one
- 11 anything 12 something
- (Grammar B2)

#### **C3**

- 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 D 9 S
- (Grammar B1, B2)

#### C4

- Countable: CDs, magazines, parties, T shirts
- Uncountable: homework, money, fruit, jewellery
- A couple of / a few / loss can be used with uncountable nouns
- A little / lots of / much can be used with uncountable nouns.
- (Grammar B3)
- Sample anwers:
- I read a couple of magazines last weekend.
- Isabella has lots of jewellery.
- Andy hadn't got much homework he watched TV.

#### Exam task

1 A 2 A 3 B 4 A 5 A 6 B 7 A 8 B 9 B 10 B

#### Grammar focus task

- 1 lots of information
- 2 lots of entertainment
- 3 a free programme
- 4 food
- 5 because there'll be a lot of traffic
- a free programme is countable; information, entertainment, food and traffic are uncountable. You can say a few free programmes; you can say a little information, entertainment, food and traffic.

#### A1

Makeover means to change something to make it more attractive.

The girl's bedroom was painted and she has a new chair, new pictures, new lights and a new mirror.

#### A2

No, she doesn't.

#### A3

- 2 Either 3 Neither 4 All 5 Most 6 Every 7 No
- 8 Both 9 None 10 Some

#### A4

- Each, all, most, every, no, none and some are about more than two things or people.
- Either, neither and both are about two things or people.

#### C1

2 those 3 that 4 these 5 this 6 those 7 the ones (Grammar B1)

#### C2

- 2 All of 3 Some of 4 All of 5 None of 6 Some of
- 7 Most of
- (Grammar B2)

- 2 Neither of these jackets fits me.
- 3 We stopped for a meal because both of us was were hungry.
- 4 I was surprised that most of the people staying in the hotel were Italian.
- 5 Either of the restaurants you suggested is fine with me.
- 6 He's tidied the garden and put away all the chairs.
- 7 I liked both pairs of jeans, but I chose the black ones for the party.
- 8 This That was an awful meal we had yesterday. We won't go to that restaurant again.
- 9 We're giving a party for my father and we're inviting all of his old friends.
- 10 Some of airports have several restaurants. (Grammar B1, B2, B3)

#### **C4**

- 2 Both 3 either 4 Both 5 Every 6 all 7 each 8 every 9 all 10 all
- (Grammar B3, B4)

#### Exam task

1 as well 2 of the 3 many 4 no-one/nobody 5 the teachers

#### Grammar focus task

neither, all

Yes.

All of them except no.

#### - CENTRE

#### A3

1 their 2 his own 3 his 4 her own 5 himself 6 hers 7 herself

#### A 4

- 2 Cara is Sally's sister.
- 3 He wants to leave his parents' house.
- 4 He works in the newsagent's.
- 5 He used Sally's key.

#### C1

- 3 my father
- 4 are ours
- 5 belong to us
- 6 yours
- 7 you
- 8 This is my grandparents' car.
- 9 This car is my grandparents'.
- 10 Those are their videos.
- 11 Those videos are theirs.
- (Grammar B1 and B2)

#### **C2**

- 2 his/our 3 mine 4 him 5 theirs 6 yours 7 her 8 his
- 9 her 10 ours

(Grammar B2)

#### C3

2 yourselves 3 themselves 4 herself 5 myself 6 himself (Grammar B3)

#### C4

- 2 There are 3 It's 4 It's 5 it's 6 There's 7 it's
- 8 There's 9 it's 10 There's
- (Grammar B4)

#### C

2 father's 3 their own 4 themselves 5 his 6 lt 7 mine 8 me 9 There 10 Alan's (All grammar sections)

#### Exam practice

1 A 2 C 3 B 4 C 5 B 6 B

#### Grammar focus

- 2 own
- 3 hurt themselves
- 4 ours
- 5 ourselves

#### A1

Elliot's going catch a plane and go to a meeting. Kelly's going to go to the beach.

#### A2

Because he's too busy to see his friends.

#### **A3**

- 2 'm not studying 3 're going to spend 4 'm meeting
- 5 leaves; arrives 6 11 be 7 'll have 8 'll be; 'll have; 'll drive

#### A4

- 1 5
- 2 1, 3
- 3 2, 4
- 4 6, 7, 8
- 5 5
- 6 6.8
- 7 1, 2, 3 4
- 8 7

#### C1

- 2 won't leave
- 3 will be
- 4 won't come
- 5 will become
- 6 will you need
- (Grammar B1)

- 2 isn't going to win.
- 3 're going to be
- 4 Are you going to join
- 5 'm going to play
- 6 's not going to rain.
- (Grammar B2)

#### C3

- 2 We're going to buy
- 3 I'll think
- 4 Paula nd Ros are going to come
- 5 I'll check
- 6 I'll buy
- (Grammar B1, B2)

#### **C4**

- 2 're listening
- 3 is he doing
- 4 's giving an interview
- 5 's he going
- 6 's going
- 7 's staying
- 8 'm spending
- 9 's presenting
- 10 are having a meal together
- (Grammar B3)

#### **C5**

2 going to look 3 leaves 4 returns 5 'll do 6 'll have 7 starts 8 'm meeting 9 'll be 10 Are you going to have (Grammar B1, B2, B3, B4)

#### Exam practice

1 A 2 C 3 B 4 C 5 B

#### Grammar focus task

1

Sale starts

Shop opens/closes

2 (two of these)

I'm working late

We're staying

we're going to spend

Paula is travelling

Paula is walking

Paula is staying

Mr Johnson is going to arrange a meeting

3 (two of these)

I expect I'll miss

Lewis will probably arrive at the concert after Jack.

Lewis will probably pick up Jack on his way to the concert.

Jack will probably meet Lewis inside the concert hall.

She'll probably bring

#### A1

They work in a café. Mr Kent is the boss, Maria is a waitress and Alex is a waiter.

#### A2

- 1 Alex makes suggestions and offers to do things in conversation 3.
- 2 Maria asks Alex to do things in conversation 2.
- 3 Alex asks for permission to do things in conversation 1.

#### A3

- 2 May 3 Could 4 Can 5 Will 6 would 7 could
- 8 Shall 9 could 10 can

#### A4

2 2 2		
Asking for	Asking someone	Making offers
permission	to do something	or suggestions
Can I	Would you	We could
Could I	Will you	Shall we
May I	Can you	I can
	Could you	

#### **C1**

- 2 Peter ought to help us.
- 3 We'll (We will) decorate the flat.
- 4 We shouldn't (should not) invite too many people.
- 5 Can you bring your CDs?
- 6 Could your mother lend us some plates?
- 7 We mustn't make too much noise.
- 8 The neighbours might complain.
- (Grammar B1)

#### C2

- 2 Could/Would/Can/Will you hold the door please?
- 3 Could/Would/Can/Will you fasten my seat belt please?
- 4 Could/Would/Can/Will you open my bottle of water please?
- 5 Could/Would/Can/Will you help me put my coat on please?
- 6 Could/Would/Can/Will you close the window please (Grammar B2)

#### **C3**

- 2 I can cook 3 What about having 4 Shall I get
- 5 Shall I show 6 I can / I could give (Grammar B3)

#### C4

2 eat 3 Could 4 Can 5 Shall 6 Will 7 Shall 8 inviting 9 Would 10 meet (Grammar B2, B3 and B4)

#### C5

- 2 May/Could/Can I leave
- 3 Can/Will/Could/Would you buy
- 4 Shall I paint
- 5 Shall I/we / Why don't we leave
- 6 Shall I do
- 7 You can use
- 8 Can/Will/Could/Would you find
- 9 What/How about buying / Shall I/we / Why don't we
- 10 May/Could/Can I put
- (All grammar sections)

#### Exam practice

1 B 2 C 3 A 4 C 5 B 6 A 7 B

#### Grammar focus

- 2 May I try on that skirt?
- 3 So would you come and pick me up?
- 4 Why don't you call a taxi?
- 5 Could I change it please?
- 6 Excuse me, can I leave my car here?
- 7 What about going to see a film at the cinema?
- 8 Shall we go to that new restaurant?
- 9 Could you help me please?
- 10 So can you do it?
- 11 Shall I book you a taxi?
- 12 Or you could take the underground.

#### A1

A reality TV programme where some people live together for a week and they're filmed. In this programme they live in a castle and pretend it is hundreds of years ago.

#### A3

	We have to	We musm't	We don't have to	We needn't
be good at acting use mobile phones take modern		1	1	
equipment wear a microphone	,	1		
take our own clothes			1	
cook the meals stay there	1			1

#### A4

We don't have to be good at acting.

We mustn't use mobile phones.

We mustn't take modern equipment.

We have to wear a microphone.

We don't have to take our own clothes.

We have to cook the meals.

We needn't stay there.

No, mustn't doesn't mean the same as don't have to. Yes, needn't means the same as don't have to.

#### C1

2 must 3 will/'ll have to 4 Do we have to 5 had to

6 mustn't 7 don't have to 8 did you have to

(Grammar B1)

#### **C2**

2 mustn't 3 doesn't have to 4 mustn't 5 mustn't

6 don't have to 7 don't have to 8 mustn't

(Grammar B2)

#### C3

1

2 needn't

2

1 need to 2 needn't

3

1 need to 2 needn't 3 needn't

(Grammar B3)

#### C4

2 needed 3 did you need 4 didn't need (Grammar B3)

#### $C_5$

Suggested answers:

- 2 You could offer to work extra hours.
- 3 You must arrive at work on time.
- 4 You ought to look tidy.
- 5 You shouldn't look bored.
- 6 You mustn't lose the key to the safe. (Grammar B4)

#### C6

2 had 3 didn't have 4 should 5 shouldn't 6 'll have 7 needn't

(All grammar sections)

#### **Exam practice**

Sample answer:

There are lots of rules in my school too. We have to be at school by eight and we have to stay there until four. We're not allowed to go to town at lunchtime. We have to do homework every night and we mustn't give it in late. That's probably a good rule because it makes us do it! Other rules are that we have to be polite and we mustn't run in the corridors. We have to wear school uniform but I hate that because the uniform is really old-fashioned. I think there are too many rules in my school.

#### A

A a book B a pen

#### A3

Photo A: 2 could 3 can't 4 must

Photo B: 5 may 6 can't 7 might 8 must

#### A4

1 3, 4, 6 and 8.

2 1, 2, 5 and 7.

#### A5

1 can you

2 are you able to

Yes, they mean the same.

2 must 3 can't 4 might 5 could 6 can't 7 must 8 can't 9 might 10 may (Grammar B1)

#### C2

Sample answers:

It must be Sweden. It might be South Africa.	It can't be Nepal. It could be Australia. It must be Brazil
--	---

(Grammar B1)

#### C3

2 could 3 can 4 couldn't 5 Can 6 can't 7 can 8 can't 9 couldn't 10 Could 11 couldn't 12 Can (Grammar B2)

#### C4

2 Are 3 Will 4 weren't 5 won't be 6 hasn't been 7 to be 8 wasn't 9 Is 10 be 11 wasn't 12 isn't (Grammar B2)

#### Exam practice

1 A 2 A 3 C 4 C 5 C

#### **Grammar** focus

- 1 We can't accept credit cards if you spend £5 or less.
- 2 It might be too difficult for Tom.
- 3 Can you take it back?
- 4 One free concert ticket for students who can serve refreshments.
- 5 Gemma's gloves might be in Katie's bedroom.
- 6 Gemma's gloves must be in Katie's flat,
- 7 no change
- 8 He can't be on holiday.

#### A3

- 2 How long are you going to
- 3 Where did you sing
- 4 Have you been to
- 5 Who is
- 6 Whose music do you like

#### **A4**

b1 c4 d5 e2 f3

#### **A5**

- 1 2, 3, 5, 6
- 2 1, 4
- 3 The answers for questions words are people or things. The other answers are Yes or No.

#### C1

- 3 Are Sam and Emma getting married?
- 4 Did Bob drive to Malaga?
- 5 Has Joanne got lots of CDs?
- 6 Can you dive very well?
- 7 Does Eddy watch football every Saturday?
- 8 Has Adam seen that film?
- 9 Had Marc dropped his watch?
- 10 Were you late for school yesterday? (Grammar B1)

#### C2

2 h 3 c 4 a 5 j 6 g 7 d 8 i 9 e 10 b (Grammar B2)

#### C3

2 Why 3 How 4 Whose 5 Who 6 How long

A

- 7 How many 8 What 9 How much 10 What
- 11 When/What time (Grammar B3)

#### **C4**

- 2 Where had he been on holiday?
- 3 What was he wearing?
- 4 Which island was he on?
- 5 Why did he have to come home suddenly?
- 6 Who phoned from London?
- 7 How did he get/travel to the airport?
- 8 How long did it take to get there?
- 9 Where is his brother?
- 10 When will he change his clothes? (Grammar B3, B4)

#### **C5**

If you agree, you say:

- 3 So have I. 4 So am I. 5 So was I.
- 6 Nor did I. or Neither did I. 7 So would I.
- 8 Nor could I. or Neither could I.
- (Grammar B5)

#### **C6**

Sample answers:

- 1 Why did you decide to become an actor/footballer etc.?
- 2 How often do you visit Europe?
- 3 Where were you born?
- 4 Who helped you when you were young?
- 5 How long do you practise every day?
- 6 Do you enjoy your work?
- (Grammar B1, B3, B4)

#### D

#### Exam practice

1 A 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A

#### Grammar focus

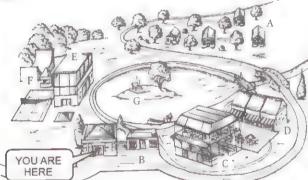
- 1 have you got
- 2 is this trip going to take
- 3 are you going to visit
- 4 's going
- 5 Does ... work
- 6 do vou like
- 7 have
- 8 did
- 9 does
- 10 do

#### **U-1**

#### A2

She mentions all of them except the campsite and the Internet café.

#### A3



#### **A4**

1 T 2 F (you can walk or cycle) 3 F (they are at the east end of the lake) 4 F (it's over the disco) 5 T

#### **C1**

2 g 3 b 4 a 5 j 6 c 7 d 8 i 9 e 10 f (Grammar B1)

#### C2

2 in 3 onto 4 below 5 in 6 into 7 at 8 on top of 9 above/over 10 off (Grammar B1, B2)

#### C3

2 on top of 3 round 4 over 5 along 6 under 7 through 8 above 9 across 10 over (Grammar B2, B3)

#### **C4**

2 on 3 above/over 4 behind 5 above 6 on/on top of 7 beside/by/next to 8 opposite 9 in front of 10 beside/by/next to (Grammar B1, B2, B4)

#### **C**5

Follow models in C4.

#### C6

- 2 She watched the children run ente into the park to the bus stop.
- 3 Timmy saw Mel in at the party but he didn't speak to her.
- 4 Andy ran through along the beach to the next village and came back by bus.
- 5 I took the ticket out from of my bag and gave it to the man by the door.
- 6 Please don't park behind in front of my window I can't see anything.
- 7 We were very tired when we arrived as in Paris after a long
- 8 Jacky hid between behind a car when she saw Lewis because she didn't want to speak to him.
- 9 I called in at Rebecca's house, but she wasn't at home.
- 10 The guide held a small flag en top of above her head so that the tourists could follow her easily.

(Grammar B1, B2, B3, B4)

#### Exam practice

#### Sample answer:

Bunbury is on the coast. There are lots of factories in the east and south of it, but most people live on the north side of the town, near the beaches. The sports centre is in that part of the town too. It's in a park. My school is behind the sports centre, and I often walk through the park on my way home. Sometimes I play football there.

The town centre has also got a lot of shops and a big art gallery. We can go to them when you visit. There's a good cinema opposite the gallery, too.

#### A1

A rugby B football C basketball D tennis E motor-racing F rock-climbing G marathon

#### A2

G, B, A, E, D

#### A3

2 for 3 - 4 on 5 at 6 in 7 at; for 8 until 9 on 10 during 11 in 12 at

#### 44

- 1 July, the summer
- 2 the end of the month, sunrise, the moment
- 3 the 18th, my birthday,
- 4 a match
- 5 one or two hours, hours
- 6 five o'clock
- 7 next month

- 2 New Year 3 14th June 4 last 5 the nineteenth century
- 6 their wedding anniversary 7 the moment 8 the 1950s
- 9 the evening 10 the end of this lesson (Grammar B1)

#### C2

2 at 3 in 4 ~ 5 at 6 in 7 on 8 at 9 - 10 until 11 at 12 on 13 until 14 by (Grammar B1, B3)

#### **C**3

2 during 3 until 4 by 5 In 6 for (Grammar B2, B3)

#### **C4**

2 at 3 on 4 till/until 5 on 6 in 7 during 8 until 9 by 10 in 11 until 12 for (Grammar B1, B2, B3.)

#### Exam practice

1 C 2 D 3 A 4 B 5 C

#### Grammar focus task

2 at 3 in/during 4 in/during 5 for 6 in 7 in

#### -

#### A<sub>1</sub>

They're triplets.

#### A2

She's worried about applying to university. She thinks her sisters might get a place and she won't.

#### A3

2 of 3 in 4 at 5 in 6 about 7 about 8 on 9 for

#### A4

- 1 prepositions
- 2 the -ing form
- 3 nouns

#### A5

- 1 check = look through
- 2 complete = fill in
- 3 have a good relationship = get on well

#### C1

- 2 by; on 3 at; at; in 4 by; on 5 by; on 6 in; in 7 at; on 8 by; in 9 in; by
- (Grammar B1)

#### C2

- 2 the children from coming in. 3 on helping him.
- 4 Ellen for helping him/for her help. 5 for breaking the jug.
- 6 Sue for breaking the jug. 7 in passing their exam.
- 8 the driver to help her.

(Grammar B2, B3)

#### **C3**

2 f 3 d 4 b 5 c 6 a (Grammar B4)

#### C4

2 The nurses have been very kind to you, you mustn't be rude with to them. 3

11

10

- 3 There are boats at for hire here, or we can go for a swim.
- 4 Are you in this country for on holiday or are you working?
- 5 My parents don't approve en of some of my friends.
- 6 Did the manager insist in on changing your a day off?
- 7 My mother's in at work at the moment, but she can phone you this evening.

(Grammar B1, B2, B4)

#### C5

arrived - turned up became - turned into connected - put through delayed - held up entered - got into refused - turned down removed - took away

#### Grammar focus

(Grammar B5)

1 on; for; for 2 I'm sorry

#### Exam practice

Sample answer:

Hi Gracie

Congratulations on your exam results! That's brilliant news. Thanks for asking me to your party but I can't come. I have to go to my cousin's wedding. I'm so sorry. I hope we can meet soon. I'll phone next week.

Love

Freya

#### A2

1 Her job 2 Finishing his essay early and looking for information/planning a holiday

#### A3

2 F 3 E 4 A 5 B 6 G 7 H 8 I 9 C

#### A4

The -ing form.

#### C1

- 2 smoking 3 No eating or drinking 4 Cycling
- 5 No talking 6 Playing games

(Grammar B1)

- 2 Check the address before posting the parcel.
- 3 Read the instructions before connecting the mouse to the keyboard.
- 4 Ask the price when booking seats for the concert.
- 5 Take a holiday after passing your exam. (Grammar B2)

#### С3

- 2 since 3 while 4 before 5 After 6 after 7 when
- 8 before

(Grammar B2)

#### **C4**

- 2 studying 3 shopping 4 after eating 5 swimming
- 6 Before going 7 since starting 8 without dieting
- 9 by emailing 10 for texting (Grammar B1, B2, B3, B4)

#### Exam practice

1 B 2 A 3 B 4 C 5 B

#### Grammar focus task

- 1 Taking photographs
- 2 come swimming
- 3 when leaving
- 4 without making, without having to make, without checking
- 5 since joining

#### ----

#### A1

1 B 2 A

#### A2

1 to wear 2 to sell 3 B 4 A

#### **A3**

- 2 wearing 3 practising 4 wearing 5 to check 6 making
- 7 me use 8 you decide 9 to wear 10 to use

#### 14

- 1 intend, remember, plan, (woul)d like
- 2 don't mind, suggest, hate, remember
- 3 remember
- 4 made, let

#### **C**1

- 3 agreed to help
- 4 refused to tell Sally
- 5 ordered Euan not to use
- 6 asked Zena to open
- 7 promised not to forget
- 8 intended to read ten books
- 9 invited Aziza to stay
- 10 expected to see

(Grammar B1, B2)

#### C2

2 d 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 c (Grammar B2, B3)

#### **C**3

3 to go 4 to get 5 going 6 to come 7 seeing 8 talking 9 to be 10 waiting 11 spending 12 wasting (Grammar B2, B4)

#### C4

2 to look 3 travelling 4 spending 5 to check 6 changing 7 phoning 8 to contact (Grammar B5)

#### C5

2 to fly 3 to save or saving 4 not travelling 5 to come 6 to see 7 to get 8 share 9 to hear 10 to book (All grammar sections)

#### **Exam practice**

1 C 2 B 3 D 4 A 5 D 6 D 7 B 8 C 9 B 10 B

#### Grammar focus

- In 2, the other answers are wrong because they are followed by -ing not the to-infinitive.
- In 4, the other answers are wrong because they are followed by the to-infinitive not -ing.
- In 5, the other answers are wrong because they aren't followed by like.
- In 7, the other answers are wrong because they are followed by the infinitive without 10, not the 10-infinitive.
- In 10, the other answers are wrong because they are followed by the to-infinitive not -ing.

#### A1

a souvenir shop

#### A 2

- 1 Because she wants to travel abroad (before she goes to university)
- 2 a camera shop
- 3 on Monday (morning)

#### A3

- 2 'll earn extra money.
- 3 they have to wait.
- 4 the shop loses customers.
- 5 unless I phone you.
- 6 'll start at nine o'clock.
- 7 'll go to South America.
- 8 'll go round Europe.

#### **A4**

- 1 3.4
- 2 1, 2, 5, 6, 7, 8.

#### A5

if not

#### A6

No (see B4)

2 If 3 when 4 if 5 if (Grammar B1.)

#### C2

Sample answers:

2 the music is good. 3 they're bored. 4 they have no money. 5 my homework is difficult. 6 they tell the truth. (Grammar B2)

#### C3

2 will die 3 learn 4 'll/will buy 5 will eat 6 will tell 7 don't enjoy 8 will buy 9 become 10 'll/will take (Grammar B3)

#### **C4**

2 unless 3 unless 4 won't go 5 unless 6 I'm not (Grammar B2, B3, B4)

#### **C5**

3 I come 4 will you be 5 The dog will bark / barks 6 you ring 7 the dog barks 8 it'll disturb 9 he wakes 10 he'll be 11 He won't let 12 he's 13 will you see 14 I wait 15 it rains (Grammar B3)

#### Exam practice

1 B 2 A 3 A 4 A 5 B 6 A 7 B 8 A 9 B 10 B

#### Grammar focus

2 apply; c'll receive 3 don't bring; h'll be 4 won't be; g fail 5 decides; e won't be 6 're; f'll send 7 succeed; a won't be 8 'll receive; b wins

#### A2

his university studies life in the music business the clothes he likes

#### A3

2 wasn't 3 went 4 had 5 wasn't

#### A4

1 past simple

2 No, they are talking about the present or the future.

#### C1

2 practised 3 didn't eat 4 didn't wear 5 gave 6 didn't make (Grammar B2)

#### C2

2 would/'d sleep 3 wouldn't catch 4 would/'d have 5 wouldn't lose 6 wouldn't be (Grammar B2)

#### C

2 didn't have 3 worked 4 earned 5 owned 6 didn't live 7 wasn't (Grammar B3.)

#### **C4**

2 didn't want 3 would stay 4 didn't come 5 would enjoy 6 went 7 would meet 8 went 9 had 10 wouldn't go (Grammar B2, B3)

#### **C5**

Sample answers:

2 I'd wear beautiful clothes. 3 teenagers wouldn't argue with their parents. 4 everyone would pass them. 5 I'd go surfing every day. 6 I wouldn't need to do this exercise. 7 they wouldn't win elections. 8 a motorbike.
(Grammar B2, B3)

#### Exam practice

1 B 2 D 3 A 4 D 5 C

#### Grammar focus

2 was/were; wouldn't be 3 was/were; could stay 4 would 5 was/were; would spend 6 'd (would) write; had

## 7 could

#### A2

alien army earth garage human planet scientist spaceship Maria does decide to see the film.

#### A3

2 was given 3 's/ls taken 4 is damaged; aren't hurt 5 is arrested 6 'll/will be rescued

#### A4

We use the verb to be in the correct form: the present – is the past – was/were the future – will be

#### C1

2 was marked told 3 is having 're invited. Α 4 were sent saw 'Il be 5 will be finished think A A 6 paid opened 7 expect to be met Α Α 8 want to find 9 to be cleaned 'll help

(Grammar B1)

- 2 The plane tickets are booked.
- 3 Contracts are sent to concert hall managers.
- 4 Hotel rooms are reserved.
- 5 Posters are designed.
- 6 Musicians are hired.

(Grammar B1)

#### **C**3

2 was given 3 was seen 4 were asked 5 weren't paid 6 were heard 7 was asked 8 wasn't given 9 was invited (Grammar B1)

#### **C4**

2 made 3 was written 4 will enjoy 5 isn't visited 6 read 7 didn't receive 8 will watch 9 were worn 10 won't play (Both grammar sections)

#### C5

- 2 has the furniture changed 3 have my nails painted
- 4 have my hair washed 5 have my clothes ironed
- 6 have a meal delivered

(Grammar B2)

#### Exam practice

1 C 2 E 3 A 4 G 5 F

#### Grammar focus

2 gives 3 take 4 provides 5 expects 6 organises 7 offers 8 encourages

#### A2

- 1 She was angry.
- 2 He hadn't washed up or tidied the house.
- 3 He offered to wash up.
- 4 She'd paid him to wash the car.
- 5 He hasn't got any money.
- 6 He offers to lend Nick some money.

#### A3

1 hadn't 2 was expecting; was 3 would 4 should 5 had 6 was

#### **A4**

b 1 c 5 d 2 e 4 f 6 should doesn't change

#### C1

2 're/are going to be 3 've never flown 4 must/have to 5 bought 6 should 7 'm/am waiting 8 love 9 'll/will send 10 's/is looking (Grammar B1)

#### C2

- 2 couldn't get 3 'd/had arrived 4 were going to wait
- 5 'd/had never eaten 6 was 7 wouldn't be
- 8 'd/had expected 9 hadn't reserved 10 were going (Grammar B1)

#### C3

2 I 3 I 4 here 5 last week 6 yesterday 7 this 8 you 9 this evening 10 tomorrow (Grammar B2)

#### C4

2 the day before 3 she'd climbed 4 had kissed her 5 she'd/would never wash 6 she was going to get 7 the next day 8 she couldn't think 9 she'd read 10 she might write (All grammar sections)

#### Exam practice

1 to live 2 I want 3 as nice as 4 is 5 've never seen

#### Grammar focus

- 1 didn't like 2 could help 3 'd/would lend
- 4 was going to visit

#### A1

The report doesn't match the headline. The headline is about the footballer's private life - what he does away from the football field. The article is about his life as a footballer.

#### A2

Tim's boss is angry because he didn't ask any questions about the footballer's private life.

#### A3

2 / 4 / 6 / 10 /

#### A4

- 1 why; hadn't scored
- 2 if; watched

#### A5

- 1 4; 10
- 2 2: 6
- 3 We use if to report questions which we can answer with Yes or No.
- 4 The word order doesn't change.

#### C:

2 told 3 said 4 said 5 told 6 said 7 said 8 told (Grammar B1)

#### C2

- 2 to have breakfast. 3 not to be late. 4 to wear a hat.
- 5 not to wear leather shoes. 6 to bring a packed lunch.
- 7 not to bring expensive cameras. 8 not to fall in. (Grammar B2)

2 reminded 3 ordered 4 invited/asked 5 reminded 6 asked 7 ordered

(Grammar B2)

#### **C4**

2 Can you play any instruments

3 Are you going to make a film

4 Which countries have you visited

5 Do you sing with other people

6 Why did you become a singer

7 How many CDs have you recorded

8 Are you planning any trips

9 What is your favourite CD

10 Do you feel nervous on stage (Grammar B3)

#### **C5**

2 if there's a swimming pool?

3 if this city has underground trains?

4 how long we're staying here.

5 if we're going on a river trip.

6 where the nearest bank is?

7 if the hotel can change my room.

8 when it gets dark? (Grammar B4)

#### Exam task

1 D 2 C 3 B 4 D 5 B

#### Grammar focus

2 to lend her some money.

3 She said she needed to buy

4 if they knew what she had done

5 they didn't believe me

6 I was jealous of her

7 refused to listen to me

8 I should do now

#### A1

a soap opera; the news; a sports programme

#### A2

1 They visit the studios in this order: news studio; soap opera; sports room.

2 a newsreader (Gavin) and a footballer (Jack)

#### A3

2 which 3 whose 4 which 5 where 6 which 7 who

8 whose

#### A4

1 Yes, you can take out the relative pronoun in sentences 1 (who) and 4 (which).

2 You can replace the relative pronouns in sentences 1, 2, 4, 6 and 7 with that.

#### C1

2 which cost £200.

3 who lives in Australia.

4 which doesn't work.

5 who won a music competition on television last night.

6 who worked for a film company.

(Grammar B1 and B2)

#### C2

2 Here's the book which I promised to lend you.

3 Why did you change the plan that we made?

4 That's the hotel which has a swimming pool on the roof.

5 Where's the bunch of flowers that you bought yesterday?

6 Elaine wrote to the university that had offered her a place.

7 This is the letter that caused all our problems.

8 I emailed all the people who my boss wanted to see.

9 Andrew is the man who won the science prize.

10 When will you finish the work which I asked you to do? (Grammar B3)

#### C3

2 where 3 whose 4 who 5 which 6 where 7 which

8 whose 9 which 10 who

(Grammar B2, B3, B4)

You can cross out who in 4, which in 5 and which in 7.

#### **C4**

2 who/that lived next door when I was small.

3 who/that gave me guitar lessons last year.

4 (who/that) I met at Spanish lessons.

5 where we're staying (which we're staying at).

6 where the party will be.

7 (which/that) I've bought for Herman.

8 whose party we're going to.

(Grammar B2, B3, B4)

#### Exam task

1C 2E 3A 4G 5H

#### Grammar focus task

1 which 2 which 3 who 4 which 5 which 6 which

7 where 8 which 9 whose 10 which

a Sentences 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8 and 10

b Sentences 1 and 4

#### A'

They're going to a party. Max isn't ready / doesn't know what to wear.

#### A2

He should lose weight / walk to work / walk more quickly / join a gym / take more exercise.

#### A3

2 too 3 so 4 so 5 such 6 enough 7 too; too 8 enough

#### A4

1 silly, easily 2 a lazy person 3 fruit 4 smart, quickly 5 small, much, many

#### C1

2 such 3 so 4 so 5 so 6 such 7 so 8 such 9 so 10 such (Grammar B1)

#### C2

2 f 3 g 4 b 5 d 6 c 7 a (Grammar B2)

#### C3

2 isn't big enough (for all your clothes) 3 too much work (to do / to finish it all) 4 isn't heavy/warm enough 5 enough CDs 6 too fast/quickly 7 is/'s too long 8 too many glasses 9 hasn't enough memory 10 didn't get up early enough (Grammar B3)

#### **C4**

2 for 3 to 4 to 5 for 6 to (Grammar B4)

#### Exam practice

1 surprised 2 many 3 old enough 4 Don't 5 lets

#### Grammar focus

- 1 I was so shocked I didn't know what to say.
- 2 I have so much money I don't know what to spend it on.
- 3 My father said I wasn't big/tall enough to be a firefighter.

#### A1

ADBC

#### A2

Orville is arrested.

#### **A3**

2 as 3 because 4 because of 5 so 6 so

#### A 4

They all mean the same except for 5 (see B1 and B2).

#### C1

2 because 3 because 4 because of 5 because (Grammar B1)

#### **C2**

2 e 3 f 4 c 5 a 6 b (Grammar B1, B2, B3)

#### **C3**

2 so she goes to lots of concerts.
3 because thieves steal from parked cars.
4 because she was feeling sick.
5 so he got a job.
6 because she enjoyed sport.
7 so she went for a walk
8 so he opened it.
(Grammar B1.B3)

#### C4

2 to tour 3 to use 4 to lose 5 to make 6 to mend (Grammar B3)

#### C5

2 so 3 because 4 since 5 so 6 to 7 to 8 because 9 so 10 as (Grammar B1, B2, B3)

#### C6

2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 D (Grammar B1, B2, B3)

#### **Exam practice**

1 B 2 A 3 A 4 B 5 B 6 B 7 A 8 A 9 B 10 A

#### Grammar focus

- 2 because he was injured
- 3 (in order) to play for the first team
- 4 so (that) they can get football qualifications
- 5 (in order) to have a chance to train at the football club
- 6 so (that) they feel part of the club
- 7 because the club had very little money
- 8 because the money wasn't available

#### A1

The brochure didn't show him that the hotel was on a busy road.

#### A2

The San Francisco

#### A3

2 Although 3 both 4 both; and 5 Although 6 In spite of 7 as soon as 8 when 9 either; or

#### A4

1F We use but and although when we contrast two different ideas. (see B1)

2T

31

4F We don't use the future tense after as soon as. (see B5)

5T

- 2 Elena speaks Polish though she's never been to Poland.
- 3 Although Zach didn't want to go to the disco, he enjoyed it when he got there.
- 4 Mum still buys fruit though no-one eats it.
- 5 Though Dennis didn't get good marks in his exams, he went to university.
- 6 Mahmoud is the shop manager, although he's only nineteen. (Grammar B1)

#### C2

- 3 Either Tom or Martin sent that email.
- 4 Dolores was working in the garden despite the hot sun.
- 5 Her dress and her jacket are both new. or Both her dress and her jacket are new.
- 6 Michael wasn't late in spite of a/the traffic jam.
- 7 My father and my mother both gave me some money. or Both my father and my mother gave me some money.
- 8 Either do your homework now or get up early and do it tomorrow.
- 9 You can either go on your bike or come with me in the car. (Grammar B2, B3)

#### **C3**

- 2 after 3 as soon as 4 until 5 while 6 before 7 when 8 when
- (Grammar B4.)

#### **C4**

2 begins 3 arrive 4 ll stay 5 go 6 leave 7 ll tour 8 runs 9 m 10 are

#### (Grammar B4)

#### C5

- 2 correct
  3 We had a good time at the beach in spite of the weather was windy the windy weather.
  - or ... beach although/though the weather was windy.
- 4 correct
- 5 We'll leave the restaurant as soon as the waiter will bring brings our bill.
- 6 This room is terribly untidy! Or Either help me to tidy it or go away.
- 7 correct
- 8 I don't play an instrument although my father and my mother both are both musicians.
- 9 correct

(Grammar B1, B2, B3, B4, B5)

#### Exam practice

#### 1 A 2 C 3 A 4 B 5 B

#### Grammar focus

- 2 This clinic is closed while the doctor will be is on holiday.
- 3 Although I'd like to come out with you, but I won't be able to because I'm babysitting.
- 4 Hotel guests can either eat in the dining-room and or beside the pool.
- 5 I enjoyed the film in spite of the actors were very bad the bad actors/acting.

# **Grammar glossary**

adjective

A word which tells us about

a noun:

a long holiday; an interesting idea

or a pronoun:

They feel happy.

adverb

A word which tells us

e about a verb:

The plane landed safely. I met him yesterday. Our team played well,

· or an adjective

It's a very old motorbike.

auxiliary verb

A verb (e.g. be, do, have) which we use with a main verb in some tenses:

My friends are singing.

She didn't listen.

Has he written the letter?

determiner

A short word which goes in front of a noun: some bread, every customer

imperative

A verb which gives an order:

Wait here, please.

Be quiet!

infinitive

The basic form of a verb which we can use after other verbs, often with to:

Maisie wants to go home.

You could get a taxi.

main verb

The part of a verb which gives its meaning (compare

auxiliary): He is cooking.

We don't have any coffee.

Did you enjoy the film?

modal verb

A special kind of verb which we use with an infinitive to give extra meaning:

He can drive

They shouldn't talk here.

May we su here?

noun

A word for a person or thing:

A woman spoke to the crowd of students.

This is the café where we had lunch.

Can you give me some information?

A noun or pronoun which follows a verb:

Let's play chess.

We don't like him.

Has she found her keys?

Ana sent me an email. [2 objects]

participle

The -ing form of the verb (e.g. playing, speaking) or the past participle (e.g. played, spoken) which we use with auxiliary verbs to make tenses:

The girls are playing tennis.

I've spoken to my teacher.

-ing can sometimes be a noun:

Studying is hard work.

I enjoy shopping.

A participle can sometimes be an adjective:

a boring film; the tired child

preposition

A short word which usually goes in front of a noun or pronoun and links it to other words:

Carole's in the sitting-room.

This parcel is for you.

We ran under the bridge.

My train leaves at midnight.

A word used in the place of a noun:

Sara took some photos and she showed them to Robbie.

Did you speak to him?

A group of words in which there is usually a verb and its subject or object.

In writing, sentences begin with a capital letter.

A sentence can

make a statement:

This CD is mine.

ask a question:

Is this your CD?

 give an instruction (see imperative): Listen to this CD.

be an exclamation:

A sentence which tells us some information:

Francis is eating ice cream.

His brother doesn't want anything.

subject

The person or thing which does the verb:

Eddie went to Italy.

This photo is beautiful.

Swimming is fun.

Do you like this music?

Why are you here?

The form of a verb which gives extra information, e.g.

about the time it happens:

(= present simple tense) He likes football.

(= past simple tense) He liked volleyball.

He was playing very well. (= past continuous tense)

A word which describes what happens:

I watched a film.

We feel sad.

# **CD** Tracklisting

Recording CD1	trac
Title information	1
1	2
2	3
3 ,	4
4	5
5	6
6	7
7	8
8a	9
8b	10
9	11
10	12
11a	13
11b	14
12	15
13a	16
13b	17

Recording CD2	trac
14	1
15	2
16a	3.
16b	4
17	5
18	6
19	7
20	8
21	9
22	10
23	11
24	12
25	13
26	14
27	15
28	16
29	17
30	10

# Grammar for PET with answers

Do you want to be confident that you have covered all the grammar for the PET exam? Would you like to improve your listening skills at the same time? Cambridge Grammar for PET provides comprehensive coverage of the grammar needed for the exam and gives you the chance to hear grammar being used in different situations, as well as offering plenty of exam practice.

- Presents grammar in a listening context
- Contains clear and reliable grammar explanations with lots of examples
- Practises a range of PET exam tasks from the Reading, Writing and Listening papers
- Includes a helpful grammar glossary

CEFR level:	Cambridge ESOL exams:
Q	Cambridge English: Proficiency (CPE)
C1	Cambridge English: Advanced (CAE)
82	Cambridge English: First (FCE) Cambridge English: First (FCE) for Schools
81	Cambridge English: Preliminary (PET) Cambridge English: Preliminary (PET) for Schools
AZ	Cambridge English: Key (KET) Cambridge English: Key (KET) for Schools

